

旅游汉语速成

Chinese Crash Course

《学汉语游中国》编写组 编

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

旅游汉语速成 / 《学汉语游中国》编写组编. —北京: 北京大学出版社, 2005. 11
(北大版新一代对外汉语教材·旅游汉语系列)

ISBN 7 - 301 - 09500 - 7

I. 旅... II. 学... III. 旅游 - 汉语 - 口语 - 对外汉语教学 - 教材 IV. H195. 4

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2005) 第 094612 号

书 名: 旅游汉语速成

著作责任者: 《学汉语游中国》编写组 编

责 任 编 辑: 张进凯

标 准 书 号: ISBN 7 - 301 - 09500 - 7/H · 1537

出 版 发 行: 北京大学出版社

地 址: 北京市海淀区成府路 205 号 100871

网 址: <http://cbs.pku.edu.cn>

电 话: 邮购部 62752015 发行部 62750672 编辑部 62753334

电 子 信 箱: zpup@pup.pku.edu.cn

排 版 者: 北京渲染人图文设计中心

印 刷 者:

经 销 者: 新华书店

787 毫米×1092 毫米 16 开本 29.75 印张 720 千字

2005 年 11 月第 1 版 2005 年 11 月第 1 次印刷

定 价: 80.00 元 (全二册 [附练习及答案], 附赠 1 张 CD)

未经许可, 不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。

版权所有, 翻版必究

目 录 CONTENTS

第 一 课	汉语拼音简介(1)Introduction to Chinese Pronunciation(1)	1
第 二 课	汉语拼音简介(2)Introduction to Chinese Pronunciation(2)	7
第 三 课	相识 Getting Acquainted	12
第 四 课	登机 Boarding a Plane(Finding the Seat)	17
第 五 课	在飞机上吃饭 An In-flight Meal	26
第 六 课	下飞机前 Leaving the Plane	33
第 七 课	取行李 Collecting Luggage	41
第 八 课	海关 Customs	48
第 九 课	接机 Meeting at the Airport	56
第 十 课	住宿 Accomodations	61
第 十 一 课	换钱 Changing Money	69
第 十 二 课	叫出租车 Calling a Taxi	74
第 十 三 课	在出租车上 In a Taxi	84
第 十 四 课	请吃饭 An Invitation for Dinner	94
第 十 五 课	做客 Being a Guest(1)	102
第 十 六 课	做客 Being a Guest(2)	107
第 十 七 课	吃饭(早点)Having a Meal(Breakfast)	116
第 十 八 课	吃饭(饺子)Eating a Meal(Dumplings)	120
第 十 九 课	吃饭(烤鸭)Having a Meal(Roast Duck)	126
第 二 十 课	结账 Settling Accounts	133

第二十一课	打电话约会 Making an Appointment over the Phone	137
第二十二课	购物 (1) Shopping(1)	145
第二十三课	购物(2) Shopping(2)	149
第二十四课	购物(3) Shopping(3)	154
第二十五课	问路(1) Asking Directions(1)	160
第二十六课	问路(2) Asking Directions(2)	167
第二十七课	在长城上(1) Visiting the Great Wall(1)	172
第二十八课	在长城上(2) Visiting the Great Wall(2)	176
第二十九课	在长城上(3) Visiting the Great Wall(3)	182
第三十课	谈旅程 Talking About What to See in the Future	191
第三十一课	看兵马俑 The Terra - Cotta Warriors	202
第三十二课	看演出(1) Watching a Performance(1)	211
第三十三课	看演出(2) Watching a Performance(2)	215
第三十四课	谈天气(桂林) Discussing the Weather in Guilin	223
第三十五课	在上海参观(1) Visiting Shanghai(1)	230
第三十六课	在上海参观(2) Visiting Shanghai(2)	238
第三十七课	看电视(体育节目) Watching TV (Sports)	245
第三十八课	看杂技 An Acrobatic Show	252
第三十九课	买纪念品 Buying Souvenirs	261
第四十课	巧遇 An Encounter	269

第一课 汉语拼音简介(1)

Topic 1 Introduction to Chinese Pronunciation(1)

1. 音节 Syllables

汉语音节是由声母和韵母拼和再加上声调构成的。声母是音节开头的辅音,韵母是音节除去声母的其余部分。例如:

A Chinese syllable is generally the combination of an initial (the beginning consonant) and a final (the rest of the syllable) with a particular tone. For example:

音节	声母	韵母
Syllable	Initial	Final
b	b	
pái	p	ái
nán	n	án
táng	t	áng

韵母 *o, e* 和以 *, o, e* 打头的复合韵母及鼻韵母可以自成音节,但任何声母都不能自成音节。换句话说,音节可以没有声母,但不能没有韵母。

Finals *, o, e* and compound finals beginning with them can stand for syllables by themselves, while any initial can not be a syllable by itself. In other words, a syllable can exist without an initial, but no syllable can go without a final.

2. 声母(共 23 个)Initials (23 in number):

1) b p m f

b—与英语‘be’中的‘b’相似,但是清音(即发音时声带不振动)。
as ‘b’ in ‘be’, but is unvoiced (the vocal cords do not vibrate).

p—与英语‘pea’中的‘p’相似,但送气强烈。
as ‘p’ in ‘pea’, but the air comes out more strongly.

m—同英语‘mouth’中的‘m’。

as 'm' in 'mouth'.

f—同英语 'far' 中的 'f'。

as 'f' in 'far'.

2) d t n l

d—与英语 'dad' 中的 'd' 相似,但是清音。

as 'd' in 'dad', but is unvoiced.

t—与英语 'tea' 中的 't' 相似,但送气强烈。

as 't' in 'tea', but the air comes out more strongly.

n—同英语 'now' 中的 'n'。

as 'n' in 'now'.

l—同英语 'let' 中的 'l'。

as 'l' in 'let'.

3) z c s

z—与英语 'reads' 中的 'ds' 相似,但是清音,发音时有摩擦。

as 'ds' in 'reads', but is unvoiced and with more friction.

c—与英语 'its' 中的 'ts' 相似,但送气强烈。

as 'ts' in 'its', but is pronounced with a stronger puff of air.

s—同英语 'see' 中的 's'。

as 's' in 'see'.

4) zh ch sh r—这一组声母,对于非汉语母语的人来说,是最难读准确的。它们在发音时,都需要向后卷起舌尖直到触及上腭。

These initials are the most difficult for a Non-Chinese to speak perfectly; they are all pronounced with the tip of the tongue curled back till it touches the palate:

zh—与英语 'jar' 中的 'j' 相似,但是清音,发音时有摩擦。

as 'j' in 'jar', but is not voiced.

ch—与英语 'chase' 中的 'ch' 相似,但送气强烈。

as 'ch' in 'chase', but is pronounced with stronger puff of air.

sh—与英语 'shout' 中的 'sh' 相似,但要向后卷舌。

as 'sh' in 'shout', but is pronounced with the tongue curled back more backward.

r—与英语 ‘garage’ 中的 ‘g(e)’ 相似。

similar ‘g(e)’ in ‘garage’

5) j q x —都是用微笑时的口型发音。

pronounced with the lips positioned as if you were smiling :

j—与英语 ‘jeep’ 中的 ‘j’ 相似 ,但是清音。

‘j’ as in ‘jeep’

q—与英语 ‘cheese’ 中的 ‘ch’ 相似 ,但送气强烈。

‘ch’ as in ‘cheese’ ,but the air comes out more strongly.

x—与英语 ‘she’ 中的 ‘sh’ 相似。

‘sh’ as in ‘she’

6) a k h

g—与英语 ‘get’ 中的 ‘g’ 相似。

as ‘g’ in ‘get’ , but is unvoiced.

k—与英语 ‘key’ 中的 ‘k’ 相似 ,但送气强烈。

as ‘k’ in ‘key’ , but the air comes out more strongly.

h—与英语 ‘he’ 中的 ‘h’ 相似 ,但送气较强 ,发音时舌根部有摩擦。

slightly harsher than ‘h’ in ‘he’ , with a stronger puff of air.

7) y w

y—同英语 ‘yes’ 中的 ‘y’ 。

as ‘y’ in ‘yes’ .

w—同英语 ‘we’ 中的 ‘w’ 。

as ‘w’ in ‘we’ .

3. 韵母(共 38 个) Finals (38 in number) :

单韵母(9 个)

Simple finals (9 in number) :

1) o e ê -i -u

—与英语 ‘father’ 中的 ‘a’ 相似 ,舌位要靠前些。

as ‘a’ in ‘father’ , only the tongue is usually more to the front.

o—与英语 ‘saw’ 中的 ‘aw’ 相似 ,但圆唇并不紧张。

as 'aw' in 'saw', but the lips are less pursed.

e—与英语 'her' 中的 'er' 相似, 但舌位要高些。

as 'er' in 'her', but the tongue is raised higher.

ê (in 'ye', '-Ûe', '-ie')—同英语 'yes' 中的 'e'。

as 'e' in 'yes'.

-i—与英语 'see' 中的 'ee' 相似, 但较短。

as 'ee' in 'see', but not so long.

-u—与英语 'pool' 中的 'oo' 相似, 但较短。

as 'oo' in 'pool', but not so long.

2) -i [in 'zi, ci, si'] -i [in 'zhi, chi, shi, ri'] -Û

-i (in 'zi, ci, si')—此音英语中没有, 在汉语中只出现在声母 'z, c, s' 的后面, 听起来很像 'z, c, s' 的延长。由于只出现在 'z, c, s' 之后, 所以不会与字母 -i 代表的另外两个韵母相混。

This does not occur in English. It is like the prolongation of the initials 'z', 'c', and 's'. As it can only be combined with the initials 'z, c, s', this final will not be confused with the other two finals that are indicated by the same letter.

-i (in 'zhi, chi, shi, ri')—此音英语中没有, 在汉语中只出现在声母 'zh, ch, sh, r' 的后面, 听起来很像 'zh, ch, sh, r' 的延长。由于只出现在 'zh, ch, sh, r' 之后, 所以不会与字母 -i 代表的另外两个韵母相混。

This does not occur in English. It is like the prolongation of the initials 'zh', 'ch', 'sh', and 'r'. As it can only be combined with the initials 'zh, ch, sh, r', this final will not be confused with the other two finals that are indicated by the same letter.

-Û—同德语的 'Û', 发 'i' 时圆唇即可发出此音。

same as the German sound 'Û'. It is produced with the lips rounded while pronouncing 'i'.

注意 Note: 字母 'Û' 与声母 'j, q, x, y' 拼为 'ju, qu, xu, yu', 省去上面的两点。

that when spelled with the initials 'j, q, x, y', the two dots over 'Û' are omitted as 'ju, qu, xu, yu'.

注意 Note : 前面有 ‘ - ’ 的韵母表示该韵母不能单独构成音节。

The hyphen (-) preceding a final indicates that the final can not stand for a syllable by itself. The same below.

复合韵母(13 个)

Compound finals (13 in number) :

1) 第一组 Group I :

i—like ‘ i ’ in ‘ I ’

ei—like ‘ ei ’ in ‘ weigh ’

o—like ‘ ow ’ in ‘ cow ’

ou—like ‘ oa ’ in ‘ boat ’

注意 Note : 在这组复合韵母中 , 第一个元音是主要的 , 它的发音要比第二个长一些、响亮一些。

The first element of each final in this group is pronounced longer and louder than the second one.

2) 第二组 Group II :

-ui—like ‘ way ’

-ie—like the English word ‘ yeah ’.

-i -iu -u -uo -Üe

注意 Note : (1) 在这组复合韵母中 , 第二个元音是主要的 , 它的发音要比第一个长一些、响亮一些。

The second element of each final in this group is pronounced longer and louder than the first one.

(2) **注意 :** 韵母 ‘ -Üe ’ 与声母 ‘ j , q , x , y ’ 拼为 ‘ jue , que , xue , yue ’ , 省去 ‘ Ü ’ 上面的两点。

That when ‘ -Üe ’ is spelled with the initials ‘ j , q , x , y ’ , the two dots over ‘ Ü ’ are omitted as ‘ jue , que , xue , yue ’.

3) 第三组 Group III :

-iao

-uai

注意 Note :在这组复合韵母中 ,中间的元音是主要的 ,它的发音要比另外两个长一些、响亮一些。

The middle element of both finals in this group is pronounced long and louder than the other two.

鼻韵母(15 个)

Nasal finals (15 in number) :

1) 第一组 Group I (带‘ n ’尾的 with ‘ n ’ending) :

an en

-ian -in

-uan -un

-Üan -Üh

注意 Note :韵母‘ -Üan ’和‘ -Üh ’与声母‘ j , q , x , y ’拼为‘ juan , quan , xuan , yuan ’和‘ jun , qun , xun , yun ’省去‘ Ü ’上面的两点。

When ‘ -Üan ’and ‘ -Üh ’are spelled with the initials ‘ j , q , x , y ’ , the two dots over ‘ Ü ’are omitted as ‘ juan , quan , xuan , yuan ’and‘ jun , qun , xun , yun ’.

2) 第二组 Group II (with‘ ng ’ending) :

ang eng -iang -ing -ong -iong -uang

卷舌韵母(1 个)

Retroflexed final (only one) :

er—与美国英语‘ jerk ’中的‘ er ’相似。

as ‘ er ’in ‘ jerk ’in American pronunciation.

第二课 汉语拼音简介(2)

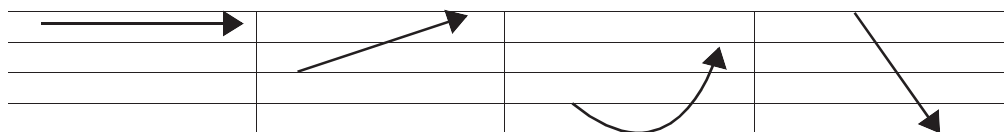
Topic 2 Introduction to Chinese Pronunciation(2)

4. 声调 Tones :

注意 Note :汉语的声调有区别意义的作用 ,声母韵母拼合以后 ,其意义是由声调决定的 ;声调不同 ,意义不同。

The tones differentiate meanings. Once an initial and a final are combined , the meaning of the syllable is decided by the tone ; a syllable has different meanings when pronounced in different tones.

1) 四个声调示意图 Figure showing the four tones



第一声

The first tone

t 他

y 一

b 八

第二声

The second tone

nín 您

lái 来

wáng 王

第三声

The third tone

n 你

w 我

h o 好

h n 很

第四声

The fourth tone

qù 去

jiào 叫

shì 是

zhè 这

第一声为高平调。The first tone is a high-level tone.

第二声为中升调。The second tone is a rising tone.

第三声为降升调。The third is a falling-rising tone.

第四声为全降调。The fourth is a falling tone.

四个声调分别用调号 - ' ˇ ˋ 表示。

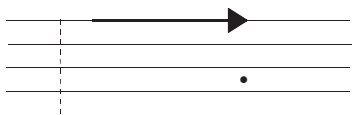
调号标在单韵母上或复合韵母的主要元音上。

The tones are indicated by the tone graphs ‘ - ’ (the 1st tone) , ‘ ˇ ’ (the 2nd tone) , ‘ ˇ ’ (the 3rd tone) and ‘ ˋ ’ (the 4th tone). Tone graphs are placed over the final or the main element of a final of a syllable.

2) 轻声 The neutral tone

汉语中有些音节不带声调，念得很轻、很短，这就叫轻声。轻声的音高因受前面一个音节声调的影响而有变化。

Some syllables are pronounced in a soft and short tone, which is known as the neutral tone. The pitch of the neutral tone is varied according to the pitch of the preceding syllable.



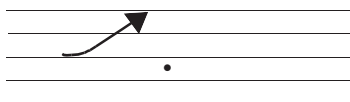
第一声 + 轻声

The first tone + neutral

t men? 他们

t de 他的

xi nsheng 先生



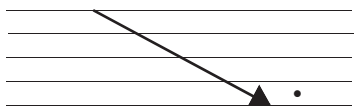
第二声 + 轻声

The second tone + neutral

Nín de 您的

shénme 什么

shíhou 时候



第四声 + 轻声

The fourth tone + neutral

tàitai 太太

rènshi 认识

shìde 是的

3) 变调 Tone changes

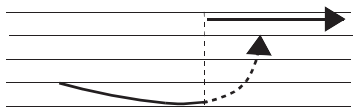
(1) 半三声 The half-third tone

第三声音节后边跟一个第一声、第二声、第四声或由它们变来的轻声音节时，只读前半下降部分，不读后半的上升部分，马上接读下面的音节。半三声音节跟后面的轻声音节连读时，差不多是一个完全的三声。

When followed by a syllable in the first, second, fourth or neutral tone, the third tone syllable is pronounced in the half-third tone, i. e., only the initial falling is pronounced, with the rise substituted by the syllable that follows.

第三声 + 第一声

The third tone + the first tone



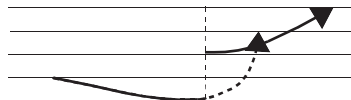
B ĭng 北京

Guìzhōu 贵州

h o ti n 好天

第三声 + 第二声

The third tone + the second tone

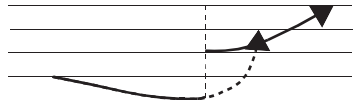


l yóu 旅游

g i nín 给您

第三声 + 第四声

The third tone + the fourth tone



w ĭào 我叫

m ĭlì 美丽

n zu 你坐

zu y u 左右

第三声 + 轻声

The third tone + the neutral tone



n men 你们

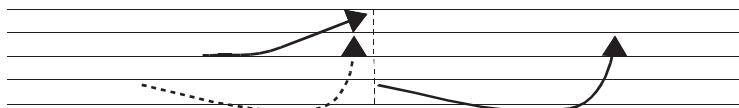
n èr 女儿

w de 我的

(2) 第三声的连读 Third tone syllables pronounced in succession

两个第三声音节连读时,前一个读若第二声。

When two third tone syllables occur in succession, the first one turns to the second tone.



N h o 你好 —→ N ĭh o

y u h n (duM) 有很多 —→ yóu h n (duM)

k y 可以 —→ k éy

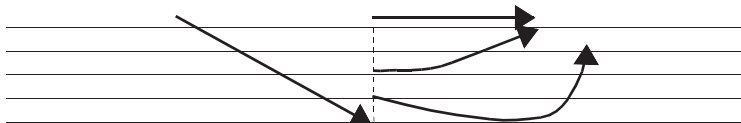
g i w 给我 —→ g éi w

xi oji 小姐 —→ xiáoji

(3) 数词‘一’(y)的变调 Tone change of the numeral 一(y)

数词‘一’的本调是第一声,在单念或数目字中不在首位时,保持本调。
例如:一、二、三(y, èr, s n)、二十一(èrshiy)、一百一十一(yìb i y shiy),
‘一’后边跟第一声、第二声、第三声的音节时,读第四声。

The numeral 一(y) is pronounced in the first tone or its original tone in isolation and in counting and reading numbers, e. g. 一、二、三(y, èr, s n), 二十一(èrshiy), 一百一十一(yìb i y shiy). It is pronounced in the fourth tone when followed by a first, second or third tone syllable.



第四声 + 第一声

yì zh 一只
yì zhū 一周
yì jīn 一斤
yì zhāng 一张

第四声 + 第二声

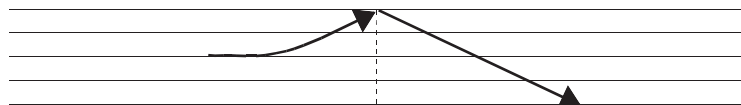
yì píng 一瓶
yì nián 一年

第四声 + 第三声

yì di n 一点
yì b i 一百
yì ch āng 一场

‘一’后边跟第四声音节或由第四声变来的轻声音节时,读第二声。

一(yí) It is pronounced in the second tone when followed by a fourth or neutralized fourth tone syllable.



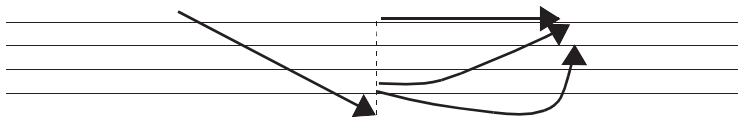
yíxiàr 一下儿
yíyàng 一样
yídìng 一定
yí gè 一个
yíhuìr 一会儿

(4) 否定副词‘不’(bù)的变调

Tone change of the negative adverb 不(bù)

否定副词‘不’的本调是第四声,后边跟第一声、第二声或第三声音节时,
读本调。

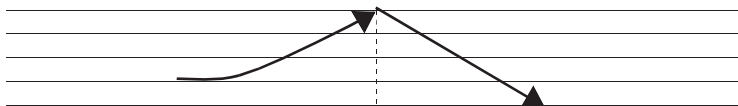
The negative adverb 不(bù) is pronounced in its original tone or the fourth tone when followed by a first, second or third tone syllable.



bù tīng 不听	bù xíng 不行	bù dūn 不等
bù chuān 不穿	bù lái 不来	bù zhǐ 不止
bù duō 不多	bù ná 不拿	bù mǎi 不买

当后边跟第四声音节时,变为第二声。

It changes to the second tone when followed by a fourth tone syllable.



bú huì 不会
bú yào 不要
bú dà 不大

第三课 相识 Xi ngshí

Topic 3 Getting Acquainted



情境 SITUATION:

李大龙(美籍华人)在机场候机大厅初见马丁一家。

Li dalong , an Chinese-American , meets Martins in the air-
port terminal.

对话 DIALOGUE

L Dàlóng : Nín hǎo ! Wǒ jiào L Dàlóng .

李大龙 : 您好 ! 我叫李大龙。

(Word for word) you good I am Li Dalong

Dàwèi : Nín hǎo , Lǐ xiānsheng . Wǒ jiào Dàwèi , Dàwèi Mǎdīng .

大卫 : 您好 , 李先生。我叫大卫 , 大卫·马丁。

(Word for word) you good Mr. Li. I am David , David Martin

Rènshi nín hěn gāoxìng .

认识您很高兴。

know you very glad

L Dàlóng : Wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng .

李大龙 : 我也很高兴。

(Word for word) I too very glad

Dàwèi : Lái , wǒ jièshào yíxià , Zhè shì wǒ tài tai ānní ,

大卫 : 来 , 我介绍一下 , 这是我太太安妮 ,

(Word for word) come , I introductions once , this is my wife Anne ,

tā shì wǒ de nǚ ér Bèilā .

她是我的女儿贝拉。

She is my daughter Bella

L Dàlóng : Nǐmen qù Zhōngguó zuò shénme ?

李大龙 : 你们去中国做什么 ?

(Word for word) you go to China do what

Dàwèi : Lǚ yóu .

大卫 : 旅游。

(Word for word) travel

英文 ENGLISH

Li Dalong : How are you ? I am Li Dalong.

David : How are you ? Mr. Li. I am David , David Martin. Nice to meet you.

Li Dalong : Nice to meet you , too.

David : Let me make introductions. This is my wife , Anne. She is my daughter , Bella.

Li Dalong : What are you going to do in China ?

David : Travel.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 相识 xi nashí

相 as an adverb , means ‘ each other , mutually ’. 识 as a verb , means ‘ to know ’.
The combination 相识 means ‘ to know each other ’.

我们相识

we know each other

你们相识

you know each other

2. 您(你) nín(n)

The word 您是 the respectful second personal pronoun e. g. :

您好 !

How are you !

您是李大龙 ?

Are you Li Dalong ?

If you treat the person you are talking with as your equal , the pronoun 你(n) is used e. g. :

你好 !

How are you !

你是李大龙 ?

Are you Li Dalong ?

But 您是 used only in the singular.

3. 我 w

我 means ‘ I , me ’ and sometimes ‘ my ’.

我是大卫 · 马丁。

I am David Martin.

安妮是我。

Anne is me. (I am Anne).

4. 先生 xi nshena

先 means ‘ first ’. 生 means ‘ to grow , to be born , person ’. The combination 先生 means ‘ Mr. , teacher , husband ’. 先生 has several meanings in Chinese , here it is used as a common address for a man , ‘ Mr. ’ or ‘ sir ’.

李大龙先生

Mr. Li Dalong

马丁先生

Mr. Martin

李大龙先生是美国人。

Mr. Li Dalong is an American.

Notice the difference in word order between Chinese and English.

5. 很 h n

很 an adverb , means ‘ very ’ when it is given stress. Otherwise , when it is not pro-

nounced with stress ,很 as an adverb of high degree is weakened in meaning.

这里很好。

It 's very good here.

王先生很好。

Mr. Wang is very kind.

6. 来 lái

Originally ,来(lái) means ' to come '. Here it functions to introduce the action that follows. Here is another example :

来 ,我介绍一下儿。

Now , let me make introductions.

来 ,你们认识一下儿。

Now , you get to know each other.

7. 介绍 jièshào

介绍 is a verb , meaning ' to introduce ' , to make introductions ' .

请你给我们介绍一下北京。

Please introduce Beijing to us.

介绍 can also function as a noun , meaning ' introduction ' .

您的介绍很好。

Your introduction is good.

8. 一下儿 yíxiàr

The original meaning of 一下儿(yíxiàr) is ' once , one time ' , but here it functions to makes the tone of what is said moderate or it is used to avoid being rude. And it also shows that the action would not last long . For example :

我介绍一下儿。

Let me make brief introductions.

叫他们认识一下儿。

Let them get to know each other.

9. 这 zhè

这 means ' this ' .

这是我太太。

This is my wife.

10. 我的太太 w de tài t i

我(w) with 的(de) means ' my ' . Generally speaking , 的 is used after a noun or a pronoun to form the possessive. For example :

我(的)太太 你(的)太太 您(的)太太

我(的)女儿 你(的)女儿 您(的)女儿

Note that when a pronoun is used thus or when what is modified is a kinship term , 的 is optional.

11. 她(他)t

她 means ' she , her ' .

她是我女儿。

She is my daughter.

If you want to say 'he' in Chinese, you should use another 他 in writing, though 他 and 她 share the same pronunciation 't'.

12. 我女儿 wǒ nǚ 'ér.

我 a pronoun, functions as a modifier of 女儿. 我女儿 means 'my daughter'. Other examples are:

你女儿

your daughter

13. 去 qù

去 a verb, means 'to go'.

我去北京。

I am going to Beijing.

李先生也去北京。

Mr. Li is also going to Beijing.

If you want to negate action, 不 can be placed before a verb, e. g.

我不去北京。

I do not go to Beijing.

14. 什么 shénme

什么, an interrogative pronoun, means 'what'.

你叫什么?

What is your name (What are you called)?

15. 旅游 lǚ yóu

旅游 means 'to travel'.

他们去北京旅游。

They are going to take a trip to Beijing.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



huān yíng

欢 迎

welcome

第四课 登机 D na J

Topic 4 Boarding a Plane (Finding the Seat)



情境 SITUATION:

李大龙、马丁先生在飞机上聊天。

Li Dalong and Mr. Martin are chatting on board.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : N zu n r ?

大卫 : 你坐哪儿?

(word for word) you seat where

L Dàlóng : Èrshí D.

李大龙 : 二十 D。

(word for word) 20 D

Dàwèi : Jiùshì x sh uǐ n qiánbi n de nà pái ba ?

大卫 : 就是洗手间前边的那排吧?

(word for word) is it toilet front the row

L Dàlóng : Duì . Nà páizhōngjiān de kòngwèi jiùshì .

李大龙 : 对。那排中间儿的空位就是。

(word for word) yes , the row middle vacant seat that 's

Dàwèi : Fēi jī shénme shíhòu dào B ēijīng ?

大卫 : 飞机什么时候到北京?

(word for word) plane when in Beijing

L Dàlóng : Dàyu B ēijīng shíjiān míngtiān shàngwǔ shídiǎn zuǒyóu .

李大龙 : 大约北京时间明天上午十点左右。

(word for word) about Beijing time tomorrow morning 10 o 'clock about

Dàwèi : Zhège shíjiān hǎo . Chī le fàn , xiàwǔ jiù kǎi shǐ huó dòng .

大卫 : 这个时间好。吃了饭,下午就可以开始活动。

(word for word) that time good. lunch , afternoon We can start activities

英文 ENGLISH

David : Where is your seat ?

Li Dalong : 20 D.

David : Is it in the row in front of the toilet ?

Li Dalong : Yes , have you seen the vacant seat in the middle of the row ? That 's my seat.

David : When will the plane arrive in Beijing ?

Li Dalong : About 10 o 'clock tomorrow morning Beijing time.

David : Good. We can start our activities after lunch.

注释 : ||| ▶

1. 坐 zu

坐 means 'to sit'.

请坐。

Sit down, please.

你们坐这儿。

Sit here, please.

2. 哪儿 n r

哪儿, an interrogative pronoun, is used to ask a location.

马丁在哪儿?

Where is Martin?

我的女儿在哪儿?

Where is my daughter?

你的女儿在那儿。

Your daughter is there.

From the above examples we see that the position of the interrogative pronoun 哪儿 in a sentence is different from that of English. The place for 哪儿 is that of its answer.

In other words, the order of this kind question is the same as a statement.

3. 二十 èrshí

二十 means '20'. Now more numbers are given in Chinese.

一 y —one; 二 èr —two; 三 s ān —three; 四 sì —four; 五 w —five;

六 liù —six; 七 q —seven; 八 b ā —eight; 九 jiǔ —nine; 十 shí —ten.

百 b āi —hundred; 千 q iān —thousand; 万 w àn —ten thousand; 零 líng —zero.

4. 就 jiù

The adverb 就, literally meaning 'none other than', here is used to emphatically indicate a fact, for example:

他就是李大龙先生。

He is Mr. Li Dalong.

这就是我的座位。

This is my seat.

哪位是马丁先生? —我就是。

Who is Mr. Martin? —It's me.

5. 洗手间 x shǒu jian

洗 means 'to wash'. 手 means 'hand'. 间 means 'room' here. The combination 洗手间 means 'toilet'. You know that 厕所 (cèsu) also means small 'toilet'. The difference between them is that 洗手间 is located in a building while 厕所 can be located inside or outside a building.

这个饭馆里没有洗手间。

There is no toilet in the restaurant.

你看, 洗手间在那儿。

Look, the toilet is over there.

6. 前边儿 qiánbi nr

前边儿, a noun of locality, means 'in front of, at the head, ahead'. It can be placed before or after a noun or pronoun.

饭店前边儿

in front of the hotel

前边儿的饭店

the hotel ahead

我们前边儿的饭店是李先生的。

The hotel in front of us belongs to Mr. Li.

7. 的 de

的 is used after a pronoun or a noun to indicate possession:

我的

my, mine

我的女儿

my daughter

李大龙的太太

Li Dalong's wife

8. 那 nà

means 'that'.

那件行李

that piece of baggage

那个小姐

that young lady

那个服务员

that attendant

9. 排 pái

排 here means 'row, line'.

这两排座位很新。

These two rows of seats are new.

我的座位在第三排。

My seat is in the third row.

If it functions as a verb, 排 means 'to line up, to put in order'.

请你们排好。

Line up in good order, please.

10. 吧 ba

吧, a modal particle, is used at the end of a statement to form a moderate question, e. g. :

这是你的吧?

Is this yours?

你找王先生吧?

Are you looking for Mr. Wang?

Such a question is used when one is not sure of his judgement and want to make sure from the answer.

11. 对 duì

对, an adjective, means 'correct, right'.

a. 你叫李林吗?

Are you Li Lin?

b. 对, 我叫李林。

Yes, I am Li Lin.

c. 她对, 你不对。

She is correct, you are not correct.

12. 中间儿 zhōngjiānr

You know 上边 (above, on, upper), 下边 (below, under), 左边 (left side), 右边 (right side) 前边 (front, ahead), 后边 (back, behind) and 旁边 (side). 'In the middle, in the center' in Chinese is 中间儿 (zhōngjiānr). See the following examples:

第一排的中间儿有一个空位。

There is a vacant seat in the middle of the first row.

那个城市中间儿有一个非常大的商场。

There is a very big plaza in the center of the city.

13. 空位 kōngwèi

空, as an adjective, means 'empty'.

箱子(xi ngzi—box)是空的。

The box is empty.

这是空房间, 你可以住在里面。

This room is vacant. You can live (stay) in it.

位, as a noun, means 'seat'. It is often used with 子.

这是我的位子, 那是你的位子。

This is my seat, and that is yours.

The combination 空位 means 'vacant seat'.

14. 时候 shíh u

时候 means 'time'.

你什么时候来?

When/What time will you come ?

她什么时候有空儿 ?

When does she have free time ?

.....的时候(... de shíhou) is often used to show a duration of time. See the following :

奥运会的时候,我去北京。

I will go to Beijing when the Olympic Games is held.

打电话的时候,我不看电视。

I don 't watch TV while making a phone call.

15. 到 dào

到 here is a verb , meaning ' arrive '.

到北京了。

Arrived in Beijing.

16. 大约 dàyu

大约 means ' approximately , about ' . See the following :

这个学校大约有 3000 人。

There are about 3 000 people in the school.

买这么多东西大约要一万元。

Buying so many things requires about 10 000 yuan.

17. 北京时间 B ĭng shíjī n

Beijing time is the only standard time used in China. When Beijing time is 23 00 , the standard times of the following cities in the world are :

Berlin	16 00
London	15 00
Moscow	18 00
Paris	15 00
Roma	16 00
Tokyo	24 00
Singapore	22 00
Washington	10 00

18. 明天 míngti n

明 means ' bright , clear , sight ' . 天 means ' date , sky , day ' . The combination 明天 means ' tomorrow ' .

马丁一家明天去西安。

The Martins are going to Xi 'an tomorrow.

明天我买火车票。

I am going to buy a train ticket tomorrow.

她明天晚上 8 点去上海。

She is going to Shanghai at 8 o 'clock tomorrow evening.

Remember that time words like ‘明天’, ‘晚上’, ‘八点’, etc., should be placed before the predicate (main part) of a sentence.

今天(jnti n—today) is given here for reference.

19. 上午 shànw

上 as a verb means ‘to go up, to get on’ (上车—get on a bus 上山—climb a mountain).

Here 上 means ‘above, up’ in contrast to 下 (below, down). 午 means ‘noon, mid-day’. The combination of them ‘上午’ means ‘morning, forenoon’.

明天上午你们去哪里参观？

Where are you going to visit tomorrow morning ?

今天上午我去商店买电视。

I am going to buy a TV set this morning.

You may want to know how to say ‘noon’ and ‘afternoon’ in Chinese. Here are the Chinese equivalents: ‘中午’ (noon) and ‘下午’ (afternoon).

明天中午你们在哪儿吃饭？

Where are you going to have your meal at noon tomorrow ?

下午你去邮局吗？

Are you going to the post office this afternoon ?

20. 点 di n

点 a noun of time, means ‘o’clock’.

三点

three o’clock

一点

one o’clock

21. 左右 zu y u

You know 左 (left) and 右 (right). The combination ‘左右’ means ‘more or less, about’. See the following:

这里离商店 500 米左右。

It is about 500 meters from here to the shop.

花两千元左右你就可以买一台电视机。

You can buy a TV set with about 2,000 yuan.

22. 这个 zhège

这 has appeared many times so far, meaning ‘this’. 个 has been used many times as a common measure word. The combination 这个 means ‘this one’.

我要去那个银行,不是这个。

I want to go to that bank, not this one.

不好,这个时间太晚了。

That’s not good. This time is too late.

23. 时间 shíjiān

You have seen the character 时 in 时候. 时 means 'time'. You also have learned the character 间 in 房间. 间 has many meanings such as 'within a definite time or space, between'. The combination 时间 means 'time'.

我没有时间学习汉语。

I have no time to study Chinese.

24. 吃了饭 chī le fàn

after dinner (to have had one's meal)

了 is a verb suffix indicating the realization of an action, for example:

下午我看了一会儿书。

I did some reading for a while in the afternoon.

明天他们吃了早饭就去参观长城。

They will go to visit the Great Wall after breakfast tomorrow.

25. 下午 xiàwǔ

下 has many meanings according to its functions. When it is used to express a part (or section, segment) of a length or time, it means 'below, bottom, under, down' etc. See the following:

从 (from) 上 (top) 到 (arrive) 下 (bottom), 大楼 (building) 高 (high) 100 米。

From the top to the bottom, the building is 100 meters high.

他们都在山下。

They are all at the foot of the mountain.

午 (wǔ) means 'noon, midday' which is not used alone in modern Chinese. The combination 下午 means 'afternoon'. See the following:

他每天上午、中午和下午都要去那里喝茶。

He goes to that place to have tea in the morning, at noon and in the afternoon every day.

26. 可以 kěyǐ

可以, an optative verb meaning 'can, may, possible', is often used before a main verb, e. g.:

可以换钱

can change money

可以拿行李

can take baggage

我可以吃西餐。

I can eat western food.

If you want to negate an action, 不 (bù—not) can be put before 可以. e. g.:

不可以换钱

cannot change money

不可以吃西餐

cannot eat western food

27. 开始 kǐ shǐ

开 means 'to start , to open '. 始 means 'to begin '. The combination 开始 means 'to start '.

演出七点开始。

The performance begins at 7 o'clock .

28. 活动 huó dòng

活 means 'alive , to live '. See the following example :

我要买活鱼 不买死(s —dead)鱼。

I want to buy live fish , not dead ones.

动 means 'to touch , to move '. See the examples :

请不要动这个东西。

Don't touch this thing , please.

我给你照相(zhàoxiàng—to have a photo taken) ,不要动。

I am going to take a photo of you , don't move.

The combination of 活 and 动 means 'to move around , activity ' in the text. See the following :

我们到外边活动活动。

Let us go out for some exercise.

我喜欢这种活动。

I like the kind of activities there.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



jì hǎo ān quán dài

系好安全带

fasten the safety belt

xǐ shǒu jiān

洗手间

Toilet / Lavatory / Washroom

第五课 在飞机上吃饭

Zài fēi jī shàng Chī Fàn

Topic 5 An In - flight Meal



情境 SITUATION:

空姐问李大龙晚餐想吃点什么

The airhostess asks Li Dalong what he would like for dinner.

对话 DIALOGUE.

KMgji : Xi nsheng ,nín yào zhMgc n háishì x c n ?

空姐 : 先生 ,您要 中餐 还是 西餐 ?

(word for word) sir ,do you want Chinese or western food

L Dàlóng : ZhMgc n y u shénme ?

李大龙 : 中餐 有 什么 ?

(word for word) chinese food have what

KMgji : M fàn、yú hé liángcài.

空姐 : 米饭、鱼和 凉菜 。

(word for word) rice , fish and cold dish

L Dàlóng : G i w zhMgc n ba .

李大龙 : 给 我 中餐 吧。

(word for word) give me Chinese food

KMgji : Y nliào ne ?

空姐 : 饮料 呢 ?

(word for word) drink

L Dàlóng : Láib ik f íba ,jī niú n íhé táng.

李大龙 : 来 杯 咖啡吧 ,加 牛奶 和 糖 。

(word for word) give me a cup of coffee ,add milk and sugar

KMgji : N íhé táng zài nín de pánzi l ,rúgu bú g u w zài g ínín ná .

空姐 : 奶 和 糖 在您的盘子里 ,如果 不够 我再 给 您 拿 。

(word for word) milk and sugar on your tray if not enough ,I again give you take

L Dàlóng : Xièxiè !

李大龙 : 谢谢 !

(word for word) thanks

英文 ENGLISH.

Hostess : Do you want Chinese or western food , sir ?

Li Dalong : What Chinese food do you have ?

Hostess : Rice , fish and a cold dish.

Li Dalong : Give me Chinese food then.

Hostess : What would you like to drink ?

Li Dalong : Give me a cup of coffee , with milk and sugar.

Hostess : Milk and sugar are on your tray. If they are not enough ,
I will give you more.

Li Dalong : Thanks !

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 要 yào

要 here refers to 'demand', 'want' or 'ask for'.

我要中餐。

I want Chinese food.

小姐要西餐。

This girl wants western food.

2. 还是 hái shi

还是 'or', is used between two alternatives to form an alternative question.

你要中餐还是西餐？

Do you want Chinese food or western food?

你是大卫·马丁还是李大龙？

Are you David Martin or Li Dalong?

这是中餐还是西餐？

Is this Chinese food or western food?

3. 有 yǒu

大卫·马丁有女儿。

David Martin has a daughter.

李大龙有太太。

Li Dalong has a wife.

The negative form of 有 is 没有. See the following:

李大龙没有女儿。

Li Dalong does not have a daughter.

But in the context here, 有 means 'need'.

再有五分钟就到北京了。

Five minutes are needed before arriving in Beijing. (There are only five minutes to go before arrival in Beijing.)

再有六分钟就吃饭。

To eat a meal in six minutes.

4. 米饭 mǐ fàn

米 as a noun, means 'shelled or husked seed or grain, such as rice'.

我们喜欢吃大米饭, 不喜欢吃小米饭。

We like to eat (cooked) rice, not (cooked) millet.

饭 can refer to cooked rice or other cereals, or refers to 'a meal' in general.

她只吃菜, 不吃饭。

She eats prepared dishes only, she does not eat rice.

我们每天吃三顿饭。

We have three meals a day.

米饭 often refers to rice.

5. 给我中餐吧。G i w zhMgc n b .

Give me Chinese food then.

The modal particle 吧 used at the end of a statement (a request here) to make the tone moderate. For example :

请给我鱼吧。

Give me fish , please.

来杯咖啡吧。

Give me a cup of coffee.

6. 饮料 y nliào

饮 , as a verb , means ‘ to drink ’.

饮茶—drink tea

饮酒—drink wine

饮 , as a noun , means ‘ drinks , beverages ’.

冷饮—cold drinks

料 a noun , means ‘ material ’. The combination 饮料 means ‘ drinks , beverages ’.

水 (shu —water) , 冷饮 , 茶 , 咖啡 , 酒 , 奶都是饮料。

Water , cold drinks , tea , coffee , wine and milk are all beverages.

7.呢 ? ... ne ?

呢 is used in a tag question , meaning ‘ How about. . . ? ’. For example :

我要中餐 , 你呢 ?

I want Chinese food , how about you ?

我们去中国 , 他们呢 ?

We are going to China , how about them ?

你饭有了 , 饮料呢 ?

You have got the food , how about a drink ?

8. 来杯咖啡吧。Lái b i k f i ba .

Give me a cup of coffee , please.

The verb 来 is used in an order , request , etc. 咖啡 means ‘ coffee ’.

给我来杯咖啡。

Give me a cup of coffee.

我想来点米饭。

I 'd like to have some rice.

你们来些饺子吧。

You may have some dumplings.

9. 加 ji

加 means 'to add , plus '. See the following :

咖啡里加一点儿牛奶。

Add some milk to the coffee.

5 加 10 等于 15。

5 plus 10 makes 15.

10. 牛奶 niú nǎi

牛 means 'cow , ox '. 奶 means 'milk '. The combination 牛奶 means 'cow milk '.

我不喝牛奶。

I don 't drink milk.

11. 糖 táng

糖 means 'sugar , sweets '.

奶里有糖。

There is sugar in the milk.

12. 在 zài

在 , a verb here , is followed by a noun or pronoun of locality.

在那儿

be there

在哪儿 ?

Where ?

你们在哪儿 ?

Where are you ?

13. 如果 rúguo

如果 is a conjunction. It is often used to introduce a condition for an event in a complex sentence. See the following :

如果你去 ,我就去。

If you go , I will go.

14. 不 bù

We mentioned 不 when we studied the negative form of 可以 . The adverb 不 is used to negate a verb , an adjective or adverb.

不好

not good

不容易

not easy

不可以

cannot

不吃西餐

do not eat western food
不要中餐
do not want Chinese food

15. 够 g u

够 means ' enough '. See the following :

如果糖不够 ,我再给你加。

If there is not enough sugar , I will give you more.

你的钱够吗 ?

Do you have enough money ?

够 can also be used before an adjective or verb functioning as an adverb. See the examples :

一米不够长 ,我要一米半。

One meter is not long enough. I need one and a half meters.

一百块钱够用吗 ?

Is 100 yuan enough (for you) to use ?

16. 再 zài

再 , an adverb , is placed before a verb indicating that the action is going to repeat , e. g. :

再见

see again (bye-bye)

再问

ask again

17. 给 a i

给 means ' give '. 给 can have two objects , the direct object and the indirect object.

The order is as follows :

V + indirect object + direct object

给 你 护照

give you the passport

我给你入境卡。

I give you an entry form.

请给我西餐。

Give me western food , please.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



táng

糖

sugar

yán

盐

salt

hú jī o f n

胡椒粉

pepper

y u rén

有人

occupied

wú rén

无人

unoccupied

第六课 下飞机前 Xià Fēi jī qián

Topic 6 Leaving the Plane



情境 SITUATION:

飞机停稳，旅客下飞机。这时贝拉发现她将一些东西忘在了座位上。

The passengers are getting off the plane when , Bella realizes she 's forgotten something.

对话 DIALOGUE

KMgji : Zhè shì shuí de bāo er ?

空姐 : 这是谁的包儿 ?

(word for word) this is whose bag

nní : A ! Shì wǒ nǚ ér de . Xièxiè nǐ .

安妮 : 啊 ! 是我女儿的。谢谢你。

(word for word) oh , it 's my daughter 's . thank you .

KMgji : Bú kèqì , gěi nín .

空姐 : 不客气 , 给您。

(word for word) not polite , allow you

nní : Nǐ men de fúwù tàidù zhēn hǎo , jì rèqíng , yòu xìxīn 、 zhōu dào .

安妮 : 你们的服务态度真好 , 既热情 , 又细心、周到。

(word for word) your service is really good - warm , careful and considerate

KMgji : Yīnggāi de .

空姐 : 应该的。

(word for word) must

nní : Tài xièxiè nǐ men le .

安妮 : 太谢谢你们了。

(word for word) very thank you

KMgji : Zhù nǐ men yíqiè shùnlì , lǚ tú yúkuài . Zàijiàn .

空姐 : 祝你们一切顺利 , 旅途愉快。再见。

(word for word) wish you all the best . trip pleasant . good-bye .

nní : Zàijiàn .

安妮 : 再见。

(word for word) good-bye

英文 ENGLISH

Hostess : Whose bag is this ?

Anne : Oh , it 's my daughter 's . Thank you .

Hostess : You 're welcome . Here you are .

Anne : Your service is really good - warm , careful and considerate .

Hostess : We have only done our duty .

Anne : Thank you so much .

Hostess : We wish you all the best . Have a good trip . Good-bye .

Anne : Good-bye .

注释 : ||| ▶

1. 谁的 shéi de

谁 has appeared many times so far , meaning ' who , whom ' . (Note that shui and shei are both corn only used pronunciations and Hamyu Pinyin Spellings for the same character.)

谁细心 ?

Who is careful ?

你要见谁 ?

Whom do you want to see ?

的 is a structural particle which is attached to a notional word or phrase to show possession , modification , etc. , by a person or thing.

这个是我的 , 那个是你的。

This is mine and that is yours.

这是吃的 , 那是喝的。

This is for eating food , that is for drinking (a beverage).

来中国学习汉语的 (人) 很多。

There are many (people) who come to China to learn Chinese.

The combination 谁的 means ' whose ' .

这包儿是谁的 ?

Whose bag is this ?

2. 包儿 b or

包 has many meanings such as ' to wrap ' . Here it means ' bag ' . 儿 here functions as suffix indicating smallness. The combination 包儿 is a noun , and is very commonly used with a modifier to show the use of it.

那是他的包儿。

That is his bag.

这是我的钱包 (儿) 。

This is my wallet (purse).

她的书包很大。

Her school bag is very big.

3. 是我女儿的。shì w n 'ér de .

It 's my daughter 's.

The phrase ' noun (pronoun , adjective) + 的 ' is shortened from the ' noun (pronoun , adjective) + 的 + noun ' . The modified noun is omitted when it is understood.

那个包儿是张先生的。

That bag is Mr. Zhang 's.

这本书是我的。

This book is mine.

这种地图是新的。

This kind of map is new.

4. 不客气 bú kèqì

A polite expression , 不客气 is used as a reply when being thanked.

谢谢 ! Xièxie !

Thanks.

不客气。 Bú kèqì.

Don 't mention it. (You are welcome)

5. 态度 tàidù

态 means ' appearance , state , condition ' which is seldom used alone. 度 means ' degree ' (noun) or ' spend ' (verb). See the following :

这种酒是 38 度。

This liquor contains 38 percent alcohol. (76 proof)

今天 26 度。

It is 26 degrees today.

这水是 100 度 , 太热 , 不能喝。

The water is 100 degrees (centigrade). It is too hot to drink.

But in 态度 (attitude) , 度 means ' manners ' . See the examples :

她的态度很热情。

She is very warm. (Her attitude is enthusiastic).

他服务态度很不好。

He serves badly. (His service performance is very bad).

6. 真 zhēn

真 meaning ' really , truly , indeed ' is used to indicate a fact and also to emphasize a high degree.

你真好。

You are really good. / You are really nice.

中餐真好。

Chinese food is really good.

北京真好。

Beijing is really good.

7. 既……又…… jì... yòu...

The complex sentence formula ' 既…… , 又…… ' is used when there are two qualities or conditions. 既 and 又 are followed by adjectives , verbs , etc. For example :

你们既热情 , 又细心周到。

You are warm , careful and considerate.

我既喜欢吃中餐 ,又喜欢吃西餐。

I like to eat western food , as well as Chinese food.

他既是我的老师 ,也是我的朋友。

He is my friend , as well as my teacher.

8. 热情 rèqíng

You know 热 means ' hot 'and 情 means ' feeling '. The adjective 热情 means ' warm , enthusiastic '. See the examples :

中国人很热情。

Chinese people are very warm.

他对我很热情。

He is very warm to me.

热情 can also be placed before a verb , functioning as an adverb.

饭店服务人员热情地欢迎我们。

The hotel attendants welcomed us warmly.

热情 can function as a noun , too. See the examples :

这个人工作没有热情。

This person has no enthusiasm for his work.

他们学习中文的热情很高。

Their devotion to the study of Chinese is really great /strong.

9. 细心 xìxīn

细 means ' thin '. 心 means ' heart , brain '. The combination 细心 means ' careful , carefully '. See the following :

李先生工作非常细心。

Mr. Li works very carefully.

我妈妈是一个非常细心的人。

My mother is careful in everything she does.

10. 周到 zhōudào

周 has many meanings , such as ' circuit , week '. See the examples :

这个运动场(yùndòng chǎng—sportsfield)一周二千米。

The circumference of this sports field is 1000 meters.

我这周参观故宫 ,下周参观长城。

I am going to visit the Palace Museum this week and visit the Great Wall next week.

到 means ' arrive , reach '. The combination 周到 means ' thoughtful '.

你们服务周到。

Your service is attentive.

11. 应该 yīnggāi

应 has different meanings and one of them is ' should '. 该 also has many meanings

and one of them is the same as 应-should, ought to. The combination 应该 means 'should, ought to'. It is often placed before a verb or verb phrase functioning as an auxiliary verb. See the examples:

不要感谢,这是我应该做的工作。

Don't mention it. I have just done what I should.

在中国,我们应该说汉语。

We should speak Chinese since we are in China.

你不应该吃那么多。

You should not have eaten that much.

12. 太.....了 Tàì...le.

You learned the adverb '太'in Level A Topic 14. But, it is the first time for you to learn the pattern '太.....了'. The pattern '太.....了'means 'more than enough' or 'to a higher degree than is necessary or good'. Inserted between 太and 了may be an adjective or a certain verb phrase. When the word inserted is one with a positive sense, the sentence is a praise, an admiration, etc.:

这个电影太好了!

This film is extremely good.

长城的景色太美了!

The Great Wall scenery is really very beautiful.

When the adjective is one with a bad or neutral sense, the sentence means something like a complaint:

你九点钟才吃饭,太晚了!

9 pm is too late for you to have dinner.

你的衣服太大了!

Your jacket is too loose.

13. 祝 zhù

祝means 'to wish, to express good wishes'.

祝你生日快乐!

Happy birthday to you!

祝你们旅行愉快。

Wish you a happy trip.

14. 一切 yíqiè

一切means 'all, everything'. See the following:

你不要怕,这里一切都很好。

Don't worry. Everything is nice here.

这里的一切都是他的。

Everything here belongs to him.

15. 顺利 shùnlì

顺has many meanings and one of them is 'smoothly'. 利means quite the same as 顺.

The combination 顺利 means 'smooth, without a hitch'. See the following:

他工作很顺利。

He works smoothly.

我的旅行很顺利。

I had a smooth trip.

16. 旅途 lǚ tú

旅 means 'to travel'. 途 means 'way, route'. The combination 旅途 means 'trip, journey'.

到那个地方, 旅途很长。

It is a long way to get there.

在旅途上, 我们看见了很多动物。

On the way, we saw many animals.

我们不怕旅途上的困难, 一定要去那个地方参观。

Without fear of difficulties on the way, we'll go to visit that place, by all means.

17. 愉快 yúkuài

愉 means 'pleased, joyful', which cannot be used alone in modern Chinese. 快 first appeared in 特快, Topic 22, Level A, meaning 'fast'. The combination of them 愉快 means 'happy, pleased'.

住在这里我们很愉快。

We enjoy our time here.

在中国旅行很愉快。

It is very happy to travel in China.

18. 再见 zàijiàn

再 is an adverb, meaning 'then' as given above. But 再 has another meaning 'again, to repeat something in the future'.

请你再看看。

Please look at it again.

见 is a verb, meaning 'to see, to meet'.

我们明年在北京见。

See you in Beijing next year.

明天上午 10 点李先生见我们。

Mr. Li is going to meet us at 10 o'clock tomorrow morning.

The combination 再见 literally means 'to see again' or 'good-bye'. See the following:

我们什么时候再见?

When shall we meet again?

谢谢, 再见!

Thank you, bye-bye!

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



shù fèi tíng chē chǎng

收费停车场

paid carpark

jìn zhǐ tíng chē

禁止停车

no parking

第七课 取行李 Q Xínali

Topic 7 Collecting Luggage



情境 SITUATION:

在飞机场内的行李认领处。

In the baggage claim area of the airport.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Láojià ,zài n r q xínglǐ ?

大卫 : 劳驾 ,在哪儿取行李 ?

(word for word) excuse me , where collect baggage

Fúwùyuán : Xínglǐrènlǐng chù .

服务员 : 行李 认领 处。

(word for word) the baggage claim area

Bèilǎ : Xínglǐrènlǐng chù zài n r ?

贝拉 : 行李 认领 处 在哪儿 ?

(word for word) the baggage claim area where

Fúwùyuán : Cóng zhèr wǎng qián zǒu ,zài wǎng yǒu guǎi .

服务员 : 从 这儿 往 前 走 ,再 往 右 拐。

(word for word) straight ahead go , then turn to the right

Ānní : Lǐ zhèr yǒu duō yuǎn ?

安妮 : 离这儿 有 多 远 ?

(word for word) from here how far

Fúwùyuán : Dàyu wǎng shí mǐ ba !

服务员 : 大约 五十 米 吧 !

(word for word) about 50 meters

英文 ENGLISH

David : Excuse me , where can we collect our baggage ?

Clerk : At the Baggage Claim Area.

Bella : Where is it then ?

Clerk : Go straight ahead and then turn to the right.

Anne : How far is it from here ?

Clerk : About 50 meters.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 劳驾 Láojià

劳 means ‘to put someone to the trouble of ...’. 驾 means ‘your excellency’. The combination of them 劳驾 is often used as a polite expression to ask for a favor (such as to ask someone to make way, show the way, to give some help, etc.).

劳驾, 在哪儿取行李?

Excuse me, where can I collect my baggage?

劳驾, 请给我那张国画看看。

Excuse me, but could you show me that Chinese painting, please?

2. 取 q

取, ‘to take’, ‘to fetch’, e. g. :

取行李

take/collect baggage

你取行李。

You take baggage.

你取你的行李。

You take your baggage.

你在那儿取行李。

You take your luggage there.

3. 行李 xínlǐ

行李 means ‘baggage’.

那是我的行李。

That is my baggage.

4. 服务员 fúwùyuán

服务 a verb, means ‘give service to’. 员 a nominal morpheme, means ‘person’.

It is logical that 服务 + 员 forms a noun, meaning ‘a person who gives service’.

我是服务员。

I am an attendant.

你也是服务员。

You are also an attendant.

5. 从 cóng

从 means ‘from’. The pattern ‘从……到……’ is often used to show a distance or a duration of time.

从这里到我家五百米。

It is 500 meters from here to my home.

明天从上午 10 点到下午两点, 我不在家。

I will not be at home from 10 am to 2 pm tomorrow.

6. 这儿 zhèr

这儿 means 'here'

在这儿

to be here

马丁在这儿。

Martin is here.

行李在这儿。

The baggage is here.

你的护照在这儿。

Your passport is here.

海关工作人员在这儿。

The immigration officer is here.

7. 往 wǎng

往 a preposition , means 'to wend'.

往前走

Go ahead

她往饭店走。

She is going toward the restaurant.

你们往哪儿走？

Where are you going ?

8. 前 qián

前 used immediately after a verbal phrase means 'before'.

下飞机前

before getting off a plane

吃饭前

before eating a meal

到北京前

before arriving in Beijing

降落前

before landing

9. 走 zǒu

走 a verb , means 'walk , go'.

往右走

go to right

他们走了。

They have gone.

你走吧 ,我不走。

You go , I won't go.

我们往前走 ,他们往左走。

We go ahead and they turn left.

10. 右 y u

右, a noun, means 'right, opposite of left'.

你往右看。

Look at the right side.

左(zu) means 'left, opposite of right', is given here for reference.

11. 拐 au i

拐, a verb, means 'turn to'.

请您往右拐。

Turn to the right, please.

请在商店前边儿往右拐。

Please turn to the right in front of the shop.

12. 离 lí

离 means 'be away from'. The pattern using the preposition 离 is : Place A 离 Place B 远 (or 近, or specific distance) Examples :

飞机场离这儿有多远 ?

How far is it from here to the airport ?

我家离飞机场不远。

My home is not far from the airport.

我家离飞机场很近。

My home is near the airport.

我家离飞机场二十公里。

My home is 20km from the airport.

13. 有多远 ? Y u du My n ?

The pattern here is '有 + 多 + adjective' in which the verb 有 means 'to reach (a certain extent)' and 多, how, used to ask the extent.

中国有多大 ?

How large is China ?

长城有多长 ?

How long is the Great Wall ?

你有多高 ?

How tall are you ?

14. 大约 dà yu

大 first appeared in Topic 26, Level A, which means 'big'. Here it means 'roughly'. 约 means 'approximately', which can be used alone. The combination of them 大约 means 'about, around, approximately', and '大' can be left out sometimes.

他大约 50 岁。

He is about 50 years old.

飞机上(大)约有 150 人。

There are about 150 people on the airplane.

15. 米 m

米 means ' meter '.

一百米

one hundred meters

16.吧。... b .

The modal particle 吧 is used here to show that the speaker is not sure of what he says.

a. 你什么时候到北京？

When will you arrive in Beijing？

b. 十点吧。

About 10 o'clock.

他有多少钱？

How much money does he have？

六十万吧。

About 600 000.

17. 件 jiàn

件 is a measure word for baggage here.

十件行李

10 pieces of baggage

这件行李是我的。

This piece of baggage is mine.

18. 认领处 rèn lǐn chù

认领 means ' to recognize and collect 处 means ' place '. The combination of them means ' baggage claim area ' here.

你的行李在认领处。

Your baggage is in the baggage claim area.

那是认领处。

That is the baggage claim area.

19. 问 wèn

问 means ' ask '.

我问你。

I ask you.

李小姐问我。

Miss Li asks me.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



xíng lǐ rèn lǐn chù

行李认领处

baggage claim area

第八课 海关 H iau n

Topic 8 Customs



情境 SITUATION:

在机场海关 ,马丁夫妇已入关 ,正在等候女儿入关。

Having passed through customs , Mr. and Mrs. Martin are waiting for their daughter.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Nín hǎo !Zhè shì wǒ de rùjìngkǎ .

贝拉 : 您好 !这 是 我 的 入 境 卡 。

(word for word) hello , here is my entry form

Gōngzuò rényuán : Xièxie ,nǐ de hùzhàone ?

工 作 人 员 : 谢 谢 ,你 的 护 照 呢 ?

(word for word) thanks , your passport

Bèil zài zhèr gěi nín.

贝拉 在 这 儿 ,给 您 。

(word for word) here ,give you

Gōngzuò rényuán : Xièxie .Zhè shì nǐ de hùzhào ,qǐng ná hǎo .

工 作 人 员 : 谢 谢 。这 是 你 的 护 照 ,请 拿 好 。

(word for word) thanks. Here is your passport. Please keep it carefully

Bèil : Xièxie .

贝拉 : 谢 谢 。

(word for word) thanks

Gōngzuò rényuán : Qǐng děng yíxiàr .Qǐng bǎ nǐ de shǒutíbāo dǎ kāi kànkan .

工 作 人 员 : 请 等 一 下 。请 把 你 的 手 提 包 打 开 看 看 。

(word for word) just a minute. please your handbag open inspection

Bèil : Hǎo de .Zhè shì yí ge xiǎo shèxiàngjī .

贝拉 : 好 的 。这 是 一 个 小 摄 像 机 。

(word for word) sure. this is a small video recorder

Xǐng lìyòng zhè ge jīhuì ,bǎ jiàn wén lù xià lái ,

想 利 用 这 个 机 会 把 见 闻 录 下 来 ,

want to utilize this one opportunity to record saw and heard ,

dàihuiqu gěi péngyou kàn .

带 回 去 给 朋 友 看 。

back home to my friends show

Gōngzuò rényuán : Hǎo zhǐ yì !Zhù nǐ lǚ tú yú kuài !

工 作 人 员 : 好 主 意 !祝 你 旅 途 愉 快 !

(word for word) a good idea. wish you trip pleasant

Bella : Hello , here is my entry form.

Officer : Thanks , but where is your passport ?

Bella : Here it is , here you are.

Officer : Thanks. Here is your passport. Please keep it carefully.

Bella : Thanks.

Officer : Just a minute. Could you open your handbag for inspection.

Bella : Sure. This is a small video recorder. I want to record what I see in China and show it to my friends when I am back home.

Officer : A good idea. Have a good trip !

注释 : |||▶▶

1. 入境卡 rù jìng kǎ

入境卡 entry form , 入 means ‘ to enter , to come into ’. 境 means ‘ boundary ’. 卡 means ‘ card ’. The combination of them 入境卡 means ‘ entry form ’.

这是我女儿的入境卡。

This is my daughter 's entry form.

2. 护照 hùzhào

护照 means ‘ passport ’.

他的护照在哪儿 ?

Where is his passport ?

3. 请 qǐng

We have learned ‘ 请问 ’. 请 here means ‘ please ’ , but in the phrase 请吃饭 , 请 means ‘ invite ’. See the following :

我请她吃饭。

I invite her to dinner.

The pattern here is :

Subject + 请 + object + verb predicate. It means : a person invites/asks somebody to do something. See the following examples :

王先生请李小姐去银行。

Mr. Wang asked Miss Li to go to the bank.

李司机请我们去北京。

Driver Li invited us to go to Beijing.

叫 can be used in the same way.

他叫你们拿护照。

He told you to get your passport.

4. 等一下(儿) D ǎng yíxià(r)

The original meaning of 一下儿(yíxià(r)) is 'once ,one time' ,but here it functions to make the tune of what is said moderate.

5. 把 bǎ

把 means ' to handle ,to hold ,handle '. Here it is used to introduce how a person or thing is dealt with or affected. '把 + object phrase ' always precedes the verb of the predicate. See the following :

请把苹果拿来。

Please bring the apple here.

请把电视开开。

Turn on the TV ,please.

李先生把钱给我了。

Mr. Li has given me the money.

请把那种给我看看。

Please show me one of that kind .

6. 手提包 sh ǒutí bāo

手 means ' hand '.

每个人都有两只(zh ǎ—a measure word)手。一只是左手 ,一只是右手。

Everyone has two hands ,a left hand and a right.

提 means ' to carry in one 's hand with arm down ,to lift '.

他手里提着摄像机。

He is carrying a video recorder with his hand.

你能用一只手把箱子提起来吗 ?

Can you lift the suitcase with one hand ?

包 means ' bag '. The combination 手提包 means ' hand bag '.

李先生的手提包比王先生的大很多。

Mr. Li 's handbag is much bigger than Mr. Wang 's.

7. 打开 d ǎ k ǎi

打 has appeared many times so far ,such as in 打电话(to make a phone call) ,打球 (to play a ball game) ,etc. . In fact ,打 has many other meanings according to its object ,such ' to beat ,to make ,to draw ' ,etc. .

打人—to beat a person ;

打字—to typewrite ;

打行李—to pack one 's baggage ;

打水—to fetch/draw water ;

打墙—to make/build a wall ;

打酒—to buy wine.

开 , a verb , has many meanings according to its object.

开门(mén—door)—to open the door ;

开窗户(chu nǐghu—window)—to open a window ;

开汽车—to drive a car ;

开飞机—to pilot an airplane.

开 , as a verb , can function as a complement , showing the result of an action.

不要在这里 , 请你走开。

Don 't stand here. Get away , please.

The combination 打开 is also a verb-complement phrase.

请您打开您的箱子。

Please open your suitcase.

8. 看看 kànkān

In Chinese many verbs can be doubled to show that the action does not last long or the action is a casual one , e. g. : 想想 说说 谢谢.

The pattern of doubling a disyllable verb is ABAB. See the following :

参观参观

have a visit to

9. 个 ge

个 in 一个人 is a measure word for 人.

10. 小 xi o

小 means ' small , little , young '.

这个苹果小 , 那个苹果大。

This apple is smaller , and that one is bigger.

这是一个小碗。

This is a small bowl.

李先生小 , 林先生大。

Mr. Li is younger and Mr. Lin is older.

In the text , 小 in the sentence ' 一定是从小就天天练 ' means ' childhood '.

她从小说汉语。

He has been speaking Chinese since childhood.

11. 摄像机 shèxiàngjī

摄 means ' to take (a picture) '. 像 means ' photo '. 机 means ' machine '. The combination 摄像机 means ' video camera '.

这是谁的摄像机 ?

Whose video camera is this ?

你在哪里买的这个小摄像机 ?

Where did you buy this small video camera ?

12. 想 xi na

想 means 'to want, be willing to, to think of, to plan to, to intend'. More examples:
他想去北京参观。

He wants to go to Beijing for a visit.

李先生不想看电视, 想看演出。

Mr. Li does not want to watch TV, but to see the performance.

In fact, in these sentences, 想 functions as an optative verb. When it is used as the main verb, it means 'to think, to think of (to miss)'. See the following:

我想一会儿。

I'll think for a while.

李先生很想李太太。

Mr. Li misses Mrs. Li very much.

13. 利用 lì y ng

利 means 'benefit'. You know 用 means 'to use'. The combination 利用 means 'to utilize, to make use of'. See the following:

他常常利用参观的机会摄像。

He often takes the opportunity to make videos while visiting.

这些旧的东西还可以利用。

These old things can still be used.

14. 机会 j huì

机 was first given in 飞机, meaning 'machine'. 会 as a verb, means 'to know, to be able to', as in the sentence '我会汉语, 不会法语' (I know Chinese, not French). But both 机 and 会 in '机会' mean 'opportunity, chance'.

在美国我说汉语的机会不多。

I don't have many opportunities to speak Chinese in America.

这是一个非常好的说汉语的机会。

This is a very good opportunity for speaking Chinese.

15. 见闻 jiàn wén

见 means 'to have seen'. 闻 means 'to hear' here. The combination means 'what one has seen and heard, information'.

请给我们说说你在中国的见闻。

Please tell us what you saw and heard in China.

见闻就是看到和听到的东西。

见闻 means what one sees and hears.

16. 录 lù

录 means 'to record' here.

我把她说的都录下来了。

I have recorded what she said.

我给他录像。

I will make a videotape of him.
请你给王先生录音(y n—sound)。
Please record what Mr. Wang says.

17. 下来 xiàlái

下 means 'below, down, under'.

请下火车。

Please get off the train.

下雨了。

It is raining.

现在下课。

Now class is over.

下一个问题是什么？

What is the next question？

桌子(zhuMǐ—table)下边有一个苹果。

There is an apple under the table.

来 means 'to come'. The combination 下来 is often used after a verb to indicate that the result of the verb will remain on a surface, paper, etc.. For example:

我说的,你记下来了吗？

Have you taken down what I said？

请你把他的电话号码写下来。

Write down his phone number, please.

18. 带 dài

带 means 'to bring, to take with'. See the following:

我可以带多少行李？

How much baggage can I bring with me？

别忘了带护照。

Don't forget to bring your passport with you.

她带着孩子参观那个地方。

She has brought her children to visit that place.

带 also means 'belt, tire'. See the following:

我去买自行车带。

I will go to buy a bicycle tire.

这是他的腰(y o—waist)带。

This is his belt.

19. 回去 huíqù

回 means 'to return'. 去 means 'to go to'. The two verbs can form a verb-complement phrase 回去, meaning 'to return, to go back'

我们明天回去。

We'll go back tomorrow.

In modern Chinese, not only a single verb, like 去 开, can function as a verbal com-

plement , but two verbs also can function together as a verbal complement , such as 回去。

他骑自行车回去 ,我走回去。

He 'll go back by bike. I 'll go back on foot.

20. 朋友 péngyou

Both 朋 and 友 means ' friend '. The combination 朋友 means ' friend '.

他有很多朋友。

He has many friends.

世界很多国家都有我的朋友。

I have friends in many countries all over the world.

21. 主意 zh yì

主意 means ' idea '.

人多 ,主意多。

More people means more ideas.

我没有主意 ,不知道怎么做。

I have no idea about how to get it done.

请你给我出个主意吧。

Could you give me some advice ?

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



h i gu n

海关

customs

Q na zài huána xiàn y wài d na h u

请在黄线以外等候

Please wait behind the yellow line

第九课 接机 Ji J

Topic 9 Meeting at the Airport



情境 SITUATION:

在机场门口 李林山先生举着接机牌“ 欢迎大卫 · 马丁一家 ”。

At the passengers' exit of the Beijing airport building , Mr. Li Linshan is holding a sign with the characters ' ‘ 欢迎 大卫 · 马丁一家 ! (Welcome David Martin family !) ’ .

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Bà ,kàn ,yǒu rén lái jiē wǒ men le !

贝拉：爸，看，有人来接我们了！

(word for word) dad, see, someone come to meet us

Dàwèi : Nǐ hǎo ,wǒ shì Dàwèi Mǎ dīng . Zhè shì wǒ tài tai ,zhè shì wǒ nǚ ér .

大卫：你好，我是大卫·马丁。这是我太太，这是我女儿。

(word for word) hello, I am David Martin. this is my wife, this is my daughter

Lǐ Línshān : Huānyíng nǐ men . Wǒ jiào Lǐ Línshān ,shì lái jiē nǐ men de .

李林山：欢迎你们。我叫李林山，是来接你们的。

(word for word) welcome. I am Li Linshan. I have come to meet you

Bèil : Chē zài nǎr ?

贝拉：车在哪儿？

(word for word) the car where

Lǐ Línshān : Chē zài wài biān er . Nǐ men yí dìng hěn lèi ba !

李林山：车在外边儿。你们一定很累吧！

(word for word) car just outside. you must be tired now

Xiān dào lǚ guǎn xiūxiūxiūxiū .

先到旅馆休息休息。

need at the hotel to have a rest

Dàwèi : Hǎo !

大卫：好！

(word for word) OK.

英文 ENGLISH

Bella : Look ,Dad ,someone has come to meet us.

David : Hello ,I am David Martin. This is my wife and this is my daughter.

Li Linshan : Welcome. I am Li Linshan. I have come to meet you.

Bella : Where is the car ?

Li Linshan : It 's just outside. You must be tired now ! You need to have a rest at the hotel.

David : OK.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 接机 jī j

接 means 'to pick someone up' or 'to meet upon arrival' and 机 means 'airplane' here. 接机 means 'to meet people at the airport' ('机' means 'airplane' here)

接你

meet you

我接你们。

I meet you (plural).

李先生来接马丁一家。

Mr. Li has come to meet the Martins.

2. 爸 bà

爸 means 'father' and the duplication 爸爸 is often used in spoken Chinese.

你爸(爸)在哪儿?

Where is your father?

3. 看 kàn

看 has many meanings, such as 'to see, to watch, to visit, to read'.

我去看你们。

I am going to see you.

4. 有人 yǒu rén

You know 有, a verb, means 'to have, there is (are)' and 人, a noun, means 'person, people'. When they are used together as a fixed phrase, it means 'someone or anyone, some people or any people'. See the following:

有人来了。

Someone is coming.

有人要喝茶吗?

Is there anyone who wants to have tea?

有人说你不去参观长城了。

Someone said that you would not visit the Great Wall.

5.了。... le.

The modal particle 了 is used at the end of a sentence to indicate a change of situation or state. Here are some other examples:

我们到北京了。

We have arrived in Beijing.

马丁小姐看见李先生了。

Miss Martin has seen Mr. Li.

6. 欢迎 huānyíng

欢迎 used here means 'welcome'.

欢迎你！

Welcome to you !

我们欢迎您。

We welcome you.

我们欢迎马丁先生。

We welcome Mr. Martin.

7. 是……的 Shì... de

是……的 is used to emphasize the aim , manner , time or place of an action. The aim of 来接你们 is emphasized here. See the following examples :

我是来拿护照的。

I have come here to collect the passport.

王先生是来取行李的。

Mr. Wang has come to take this luggage.

8. 车 ch

车 means ' vehicle (car , bus , bike. . .) '.

你的车

your car

我有车。

I have a car.

9. 外边儿 wài bi nr

外 means ' outside ' when it is used to express a location and it is often combined with ' 外边儿 or 外面 '. 外边儿 means ' outside '

汽车在外边儿。

The car is just outside.

马太太在那个旅馆外面。

Mrs. Ma is outside of that hotel.

10. 一定 yí dìng

一定 means ' must '.

2008 年他一定去北京旅游。

He must go to visit Beijing in 2008.

他们不一定想先休息。

They may not want to have a rest first.

他们一定不想先休息。

They must not want to have a rest first.

11. 累 lèi

累 means ' tired '.

他们大约走了两万米。他们一定很累。

They have walked about 20000 meters and they must be very tired.

我们一点儿不累。

We are not tired at all.

12. 先 xi n

先 means 'first'.

李大龙先去北京,再去上海。

Li Dalong is going to Beijing first, then to Shanghai.

谁打算先看体育节目?

Who plans to watch the sports program first?

13. 旅馆 l u n

旅 means 'to stay away from home' as mentioned before. 馆 means 'house (for guests)'. The combination of them 旅馆 means 'hotel'.

我们就住在这个旅馆里。

We just stay in this hotel.

这个地方没有好旅馆。

There are no good hotels in this place.

14. 休息休息。xi xi xi xi.

休息休息 means 'a short rest'.

Chinese verbs can be duplicated. The pattern for the duplication of two-syllable verbs is ABAB, for example:

休息休息 (take a rest)

参观参观 (have a visit)

比赛比赛 (have a match)

The duplicated verb means that the action lasts only for a short while.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters

sh u d j ch na

首都机场

Capital Airport

第十课 住宿 Zhùsù

Topic 10 Accomodations



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家单独去承德参观 ,为了练习汉语 ,没让旅行社给预订住处。他们到承德后在旅馆自己订房间。

The Martins are going to visit Chengde on their own. To try out their Chinese ,they did not book their rooms through a travel agency ,they 're doing it themselves .

对话 DIALOGUE

Fúwùyuán : Nín hǎo , xiānshēng , nín yào dīng fángjiān ma ?

服务员 : 您好 , 先生 , 您要订房间吗 ?

(word for word) good morning , sir. Do you want to book rooms

Dàwèi : Duì. Wǒ dīng yí ge dān rénjiān , yí ge shuāng rénjiān .

大卫 : 对。我订一个单人间 , 一个双人间。

(word for word) yes. I want to book a single room , a double room

Fúwùyuán : Dān rénjiān měi wǎn 30 měiyuán ,

服务员 : 单人间每晚 30 美元 ,

(word for word) a single room per night 30 US dollars ,

shuāng rénjiān 50 měiyuán .

双人间 50 美元。

a double room 50 US dollars

Dàwèi : Wǒ men zhù liǎng tiān , xīngqī sì shàngwǔ líkāi .

大卫 : 我们住两天 , 星期四上午离开。

(word for word) we 'll stay two nights , Thursday morning leave

Fúwùyuán : Nǐ men xǐhuān zhù jǐ céng ?

服务员 : 你们喜欢住几层 ?

(word for word) you prefer to stay which floor

Dàwèi : Yuè gāo yuè hǎo , kànde yuǎn .

大卫 : 越高越好 , 看得远。

(word for word) the higher , the better. see(view) distant

英文 ENGLISH

Clerk : Good morning , sir. Do you want to book rooms ?

David : Yes. I want to book a single room and a double room.

Clerk : 30 US dollars per night for a single room and 50 for a double room.

David : We 'll stay two nights and leave on Thursday morning.

Clerk : Which floor do you prefer ?

David : The higher , the better. We can have a good view.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 住宿 zhùsù

住 means 'to live, to stay' as we discussed before. 宿 means 'to lodge for a night' here, which is not used alone in modern Chinese. The combination of them 住宿 means 'to get an accommodation'.

我们要在这里住宿。

We want to stay here for the night.

他们在什么地方住宿？

Where are they going to stay for the night?

2. 订 dìng

订 means 'to order, to make reservation for'.

马丁先生要订三张飞机票。

Mr. Martin wants to book 3 air tickets.

我想在这个饭店订座位。

I want to make a reservation for seats in the restaurant.

3. 房间 fángjiān

房间 here refers to 'room'.

这是你的房间。

This is your room.

她的房间很好。

Her room is very good.

4. 吗 ma

So far we have learned the following ways to make a question :

1) Give a statement a rising tune :

你们是一家？

Are you of one family?

2) Use interrogative pronouns, like 哪儿 :

我的座位在哪儿？

Where is my seat?

3) Use 还是 :

你要中餐, 还是西餐？

Do you want Chinese food or western food?

In this topic, we have come across another question form, i. e., the use of 吗 at the end of a statement. See the following :

a. 您是马丁先生吗？

Are you Mr. Martin?

b. 这是您的护照吗？

Is this your passport?

c. 您找马丁吗？

Are you looking for Mr. Martin ?

The expected answer is :

[1] 我找马丁。(or shortly :是 Shì—yes)。

The negative answer is :

[2] 我不找马丁。(or shortly :不 Bù—no。)

d. 这是你的护照吗？

Is this your passport ?

The expected answer is :

这是我的护照。(or shortly :是 Shì—yes)

The negative answer is :

这不是我的护照。(or shortly :不是 Búshì—no)

5. 对 duì

对 means ' correct '.

对。这是去北京的火车。

Right ,this is the train to Beijing.

你说得很对。

What you said is absolutely right.

6. 个 ge

个 (ge) , which is a measure word for 人 and many other nouns , is given here for reference since it is very frequently used.

一个人

one person

那里有几个人？

How many people are there ?

7. 单人间 dān rénjiān

单 as a noun means ' bill , form ' as we discussed before. Here , it means ' single , alone '. 人 means ' person , people ' as we 've covered before. 间 refers to ' 房间 ' (room). The combination of them 单人间 means ' a room for one person '. 双 (shuāng) means ' double '. 双人间 (shuāng rénjiān) means ' a room for two persons '.

她要单人间 ,不要双人间。

She wants a single room , rather than a double one.

这个旅馆有多少单人间？多少双人间？

How many single rooms and double rooms are there in this hotel ?

8. 每 měi

每 means ' every , each , per '.

每天 every day

每晚 every night (evening)

每人 everyone (per person)

每张票 each ticket

每个地方 every place

9. 晚 wǎn

晚 means 'night' when it is used as a measure word of time. It is often combined with 上 and it functions as a noun, meaning 'night or evening'. See the following:

单人间每晚 30 美元。

It costs 30 US dollars per night for a single room.

我要在这里住三个晚上。

I will stay here for 3 nights.

今天晚上 6 点我去看你。

I am going to see you at six this evening.

When 晚 functions as an adjective, 晚 means 'late'.

对不起,我晚了。

Sorry, I'm late.

10. 美元 mēiyuán

美 means 'beautiful' as we discussed before. Here 美 is the shortened translation of 'America', referring to '美国' (the United States). The combination of them 美元 (dollar) means 'U. S. dollar'.

我有十万美元。

I have U. S. \$ 100 000.

他想兑换美元。

He wants to exchange U. S. dollars.

11. 住 zhù

住 means 'live, stay', e. g.:

你在哪儿住?

Where do you live?

我们在北京住。

We live in Beijing.

马丁在三层住。

Mr. Martin lives on the third floor.

12. 两 liǎng

两 means 'two'. In general, before measure words, we prefer 两 to 二。

两个人 (two people)

两间房间 (two rooms)

两块钱 (two yuan)

But, there are still a few exceptions such as:

a. '20' is only read 'ershí';

b. If '2' comes at the end of a big number, we have to use 'er' (十二个人)。

13. 天 ti n

天 means 'day'.

他们要比赛三天。

Their match is going to last for 3 days.

你在北京参观几天？

How many days are you going to spend visiting Beijing.

14. 星期 x ngq

星 means 'star'. 期 means 'a period of time'. The combination of them 星期 means 'week'.

他们打算在上海住五个星期。

They plan to stay in Shanghai for 5 weeks.

星期 can be used before '一 二 三 四 五 六 日' to form '星期一' (Monday), '星期二' (Tuesday), '星期三' (Wednesday), '星期四' (Thursday), '星期五' (Friday), '星期六' (Saturday), '星期日' (Sunday) respectively.

今天是星期一吗？

Is it Monday today?

明天是星期几？

What day (of the week) is it tomorrow?

15. 上午 shànaw

上 as a verb means 'to go up, to get on' (上车—get on a bus 上山—climb a mountain).

Here 上 means 'above, up' in contrast to 下 (below, down). 午 means 'noon, mid-day'. The combination of them 上午 means 'morning, forenoon'.

明天上午你们去哪里参观？

Where are you going to visit tomorrow morning?

今天上午我去商店买电视。

I am going to buy a TV this morning.

You may want to know how to say 'noon' and 'afternoon' in Chinese. Here are the Chinese equivalents: 中午 (noon) and 下午 (afternoon).

明天中午你们在哪儿吃饭？

Where are you going to have your meal at noon tomorrow?

下午你去邮局吗？

Are you going to the post office this afternoon?

16. 离开 lk i

离 means 'be apart from' as we discussed before. 开 means 'to open, off'.

The combination 离开 means 'to leave'.

我们明天晚上七点离开这里。

We are to leave here at 7 o'clock tomorrow evening.

贝拉不想离开北京, 还想再住一天。

Bella won't leave Beijing now and wants to stay one day more.

17. 喜欢 x huān

喜 means 'happy, happiness'. 欢 means 'joyous, lively'. The combination of them 喜欢 means 'to like, be fond of'.

他们喜欢中国。

They like China.

我不喜欢参观那个地方。

I don't like to visit that place.

请问,您喜欢吃什么?

Excuse me, what would you like to eat?

18. 几 jǐ

几 means 'how many' when it functions as an interrogative pronoun.

几个人住在 707 房间?

How many people stay in Room 707?

When 几 functions as an approximate number, 几 means 'several, a few, less than ten'.

我有几个朋友在中国学汉语。

I have several friends studying Chinese in China.

19. 层 céng

层 means 'layer, storey, floor'.

这个旅馆有 30 层。

This hotel has 30 storeys.

你住几层?

Which floor do you live on?

20. 越高越好 yuè gāo yuè hǎo

越 means 'more' here. 高 means 'high'. 越高越好 means 'the higher the better'.

The pattern '越 + adjective (1) or verb + 越 + adjective (2)' is very common in modern Chinese. More examples are given here.

你的钱越多越好。

The more money you have, the better.

他越走越快。

The more he walks the faster he goes.

21. 高 gāo

这个地方很高。

This place is very high.

马丁先生比他太太高。

Mr. Martin is taller than his wife.

22. 看得远 kàn de yuǎn

In this verb phrase, the adjective 远 is the postmodifier of the verb 看 and between them, there should be the structural particle 得. The postmodifier indicates the result or extent that the action (a habitual or past one) achieves.

他们玩儿得很高兴。

They played very happily.

李太太走得很快。

Mrs. Li walked very fast.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



fú wù tái

服务台

Reception Counter

cān tīng

餐厅

Dining Hall/Restaurant

第十一课 换钱 Huàn Qián

Topic 11 Changing Money



情境 SITUATION:

马丁在旅店内的“外汇兑换处”。

David Martin is at the foreign currency exchange counter in the hotel.

对话 DIALOGUE

gMgzu rényuán : Nín xi ng huàn qián ma ?

工作 人员 : 您 想 换 钱 吗 ?

(word for word) you want change money

Dàwèi : Duì. W xi ng y ng m iyuán huàn rénminbì.

大卫 : 对。我 想 用 美 元 换 人 民 币。

(word for word) yes. I'd like to use US dollars change RMB

GMgzu rényuán : M iyuán hé rénminbì de b jià shì yì m iyuán

工作 人员 : 美 元 和 人 民 币 的 比 价 是 一 美 元

(word for word) US dollar and RMB exchange rate is 1 US dollar

huàn b kuàì èr máo rénminbì.

换 八 块 二 毛 人 民 币。

to 8.20 RMB

Dàwèi : W xi ng huàn w b im iyuán .

大卫 : 我 想 换 五 百 美 元 。

(word for word) i want to change 500 US dollars

GMgzu rényuán : Nín y ng xiànjīn ,háishì y ng l xíng zh pào ?

工作 人员 : 您 用 现 金 ,还 是 用 旅 行 支 票 ?

(word for word) you to use pay by cash , or to use travelers check

Dàwèi : Y ng xiànjīn .

大卫 : 用 现 金。

(word for word) to use cash

英文 ENGLISH

Teller : Do you want to change money ?

David : Yes. I'd like to change US dollars for RMB.

Teller : The exchange rate is 1 US dollar to 8.20 RMB.

David : I want to change 500 US dollars.

Teller : Will you pay by cash or travelers check ?

David : In cash.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 用 y na

用 means 'to use'.

他每天用车。

He uses a car every day.

你用地图吗？

Do you use the map ?

我要用钥匙。

I want to use the key.

张先生用美元买电视。

Mr. Zhang used US dollars to buy a TV.

她不想用美元买火车票。

She does not want to use US dollars to buy train tickets.

2. 换 huàn

换 is a verb , meaning 'change , exchange'.

换钱

change money

我换钱。

I change money.

马丁换钱。

Mr. Martin changes money.

李明换钱。

Li Ming changes money.

李龙在这儿换钱。

Li long changes money here.

3. 人民币 rénmínbì

As we know 人 means 'people , person , human being'. 民 means 'common people'.

The combination of them 人民 means 'the people'.

中国人民喜欢旅游。

Chinese people like to travel.

人民不是一个人。

'People' does not refer to a single person.

币 (bì) means 'currency'. 人民币 means 'the people's currency , RMB'.

他是外国人 , 没有人民币。

He is a foreigner , and has no RMB.

4. 比价 bǐ jià

As we know 比 means 'to compare'. 价 means 'price'. The combination of them 比价 means 'rate of exchange'.

美元和人民币比价是多少？

What is the exchange rate of the U. S. dollar to RMB ?

英镑(yīngbàng—the pound sterling)和人民币的比价是一比十一。

The exchange rate of the pound sterling to RMB is 1 to 11.

5. 八块二毛 bā kuài èr máo

The Chinese currency is called 人民币(rénmínbì). There are three basic units in Renminbi :

元(yuán), 角(jiǎo) and 分(fēn).

1 元 = 10 角 = 100 分

0.1 元 = 1 角 = 10 分

0.01 元 = 0.1 角 = 1 分

In spoken Chinese, we often use the units of 块(kuài) for 元, 毛(máo) for 角(jiǎo) and 分(fēn). The counting of Chinese money is like this :

0.02 yuán 两分(钱) / 二分(钱)

0.20 yuán 二角(钱) / 两毛(钱)

0.25 yuán 二角五分(钱) / 两毛五(分钱)

1.00 yuán 一元(钱) / 一块(钱)

1.02 yuán 一元零二分(钱) / 一块零二(分钱)

1.22 yuán 一元二角二分(钱) / 一块两毛二(分钱)

2.34 yuán 二元三角四分(钱) / 两块三毛四(分钱)

12.87 yuán 十二元八角七分(钱) / 十二块八毛七(分钱)

Notice the use of 两 for 'two' used with the first unit of an amount of money in spoken Chinese. 钱 is often used with the whole amount and in spoken Chinese, the last unit is usually omitted.

6. 现金 xiànjīn

现 means 'present, existing, current'. 金 means 'gold, money'. The combination of them 现金 means 'cash'.

对不起。我有旅行支票,没有现金。

Sorry, I have no cash, but have travelers checks.

我的现金不多,只有一百元。

The cash I have is not much, only 100 yuan.

7. 支票 zhī piào

支 means 'to pay' here. 票, as mentioned above, means 'bill, ticket'. The combination of them 支票 means 'check'.

来中国前,我们用现金换了旅行支票。

Before coming to China, we changed cash for travelers checks.

他们不用支票。

They don't accept checks.

8. 是 shì

是 has the following meanings in this topic :

[1] When 是 is used before nouns or pronouns to identify the subject , it means ' to be ' :

我是李大龙。

I am Li Dalong.

他是李先生。

He is Mr. Li.

[2] When 是 is used in affirmative answers , it means ' yes , right ' .

A. 你是他女儿？

Are you his daughter ?

B. 是。

Yes.

A. 你是他太太？

Are you his wife ?

B. 是。我是他太太。

Yes , I am his wife.

9. 还是 hái shì

还是 ' or ' , is used between two alternatives to form an alternative question.

你要中餐还是西餐？

Do you want Chinese food or western food ?

你是大卫·马丁 还是李大龙？

Are you David Martin or Li Dalong ?

这是中餐，还是西餐？

Is this Chinese food or western food ?

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters

yín hána

银行

bank

wài huì

外汇

foreign exchange

第十二课 叫出租车 Jiào Chū zū chē

Topic 12 Calling a Taxi



情境 SITUATION:

在商店外 ,见一出租车停在那里。

A taxi for hire is outside a shop.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Y u liàng kōngchē tíng zài nàlǐ . W qù kànkàn .

大卫 : 有 辆 空车 停 在那里。我 去 看看 。

(word for word) have a taxi for hire park there. I'll go look

S j : Xī nshēng yào chē ma ? W kǎi chē y u kuàiy u ānquán .

司机 : 先 生 要 车 吗 ? 我 开 车 又 快 又 安全 。

(word for word) sir , will take a taxi ? I drive quickly and safely

Dàwèi : Yào . W men sān gè rén qù " Huáy u Fàndiàn " .

大卫 : 要 。我们 三 个人 去 “ 华友 饭店 ” 。

(word for word) yes. we three human going to the Huayou Hotel

S j : Huānyíng , qǐng shàng chē .

司机 : 欢迎 , 请 上 车 。

(word for word) welcome. please get in

Dàwèi : Yī gōnglǐ duōshǎo qián ?

大卫 : 一 公里 多少 钱 ?

(word for word) per kilometer how much

S j : M ī gōnglǐ liǎng kuài .

司机 : 每 公里 两 块 。

(word for word) per kilometer two yuan

Bèilā : Tài guì le ! W zuò guo ,

贝拉 : 太 贵了 ! 我 坐过 ,

(word for word) too expensive. I have taken a taxi

M ī gōnglǐ yī kuài liù .

每 公里 一 块 六 。

per kilometer one yuan and sixty cents

S j : Xiǎo jī , chē bù yíyàng . Xìngxìn w ,

司机 : 小姐 , 车 不 一样 。相信 我 ,

(word for word) young lady , That 's for another type of taxi , Trust me ,

fāngxīnbā ! W bú huì piànn men .

放心吧 ! 我 不 会 骗 你们 。

don't worry ! I wouldn't cheat you.

David : Look ,there is taxi for hire there. I 'll go and have a look.

Driver : Will you take a taxi ,sir ?I drive quickly and safely.

David : Yes. We are going to the Huayou Hotel.

Driver : Welcome. Get in ,please.

David : How much is it per kilometer ?

Driver : Two yuan.

Bella : It 's too expensive. I have taken a taxi. I know the price.
It 's one yuan and sixty cents per kilometer.

Driver : That 's for another type of taxi ,young lady. Trust me ,
don 't worry !I wouldn 't cheat you.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 辆 liàng

辆 is a measure word for car , bus , bike , train , etc. .

一辆出租车

a taxi

找一辆出租车

find a taxi

In the second example ,the ' numeral + measure word + noun 'phrase serves as object to the verb. When the numeral is '一' , '一' (one) is optional. See the following :

找辆出租车

find a taxi

那里有个服务员。

there is an attendant there.

2. 空车 kōngchē

空 ,an adjective , means ' empty '. 空车 ,a noun , means ' a car for hire '.

这里有空车吗 ?

Is there any car for hire here ?

你找空车 ,我也找空车。

You are looking for a car for hire. Me , too.

3. 停 tíng

停 means 'to stop, to stay, to park'.

雨停了, 我们可以去外边玩儿。

The rain has stopped and we can go outside to play.

我们在北京停了三天, 看了不少地方。

We stayed in Beijing for three days and visited many places.

我的车停在哪里?

Where can I park my car?

我们的老师(1 osh —teacher)病了三天, 我们也停课三天。

Our teacher was ill for 3 days and our classes were also suspended for three days.

4. 那里 nàlǐ

那里 a demonstrative pronoun, means 'that place, there', same as 那儿。

那里有银行。

There is a bank there.

那里有飞机。

There is an airplane there.

李先生在那里。

Mr. Li is there.

Note: 里 a nominal morpheme of locality, means 'inside'. It is often preceded by a noun or pronoun, e. g. 那里 (that place, there), 这里 (this place, here) 哪里 (which place, where) 家里 (at home), 银行里 (in a bank). 里 is not used after a noun indicating a geographical place itself. It is wrong to say 我在北京里 (w zài B ĭng l)。

5. 先生要车吗? Xi nsheng yào chē ma?

Will you take a taxi, sir?

先生要车吗? literally meaning 'Do you want a taxi?', is used by a taxi driver to greet the passenger. It is not in the least bit rude, as it may sound to westerners. Similar expressions are:

您要什么? / 您买什么? (Used by a shop assistant to greet the customer.)

您吃(点儿)什么? (Used by a waiter at the restaurant. When '点儿' is used, it is more polite.)

6. 开车 kāi chē

开 means 'unclose, drive'. 车 means 'vehicle' referring to car, bus, train, bike etc..

The combination 开车 here means 'to drive a car'.

7. 又 yòu

又 means 'again'.

李先生又来参观了。

Mr. Li has come for a visit again.

8. 快 kuài

快 means 'fast, be quick, to hurry up'.

他进步很快。

He has made rapid progress.

火车开得很快。

The train runs very fast.

没时间了,请你快说。

Time is running out, speak quickly, please.

快上车!

Hurry up and get on the bus!

快 also means 'soon, before long'.

他快从英国回来了。

He'll be back soon from U. K.

快三点了,快走吧!

It is about 3 o'clock already. Go quickly!

9. 安全 ānquán

安 means 'peaceful, to install, to fix'.

请你把电视安放好。

Place the TV safely.

我没把工作做好,我很不安。

I haven't got the job done well and I feel rather uneasy.

请你把电脑(diànnǎo—computer)安好。

Please install the computer well.

全 means 'complete, all, entirely'. See the following:

这里的東西很全,要什么有什么。

There is a wide assortment of things here and one can get everything he wants.

我们全家都参观过西安兵马俑。

My whole family has visited the Terra-cotta Warriors of Xi'an.

请你把这些书全拿走吧。

Please take all these books away.

The combination 安全 means 'safe, safety, secure, security'. See the following:

请记住'安全第一'。

Please remember 'Safety first!'

我们很安全,请放心。

We are safe, don't worry.

10. 十 shí

十 means '10'. Now more numbers are given in Chinese.

一 yī—one; 二 èr—two; 三 sān—three; 四 sì—four; 五 wǔ—five;

六 liù—six; 七 qī—seven; 八 bā—eight; 九 jiǔ—nine; 十 shí—ten.

百 bǎi—hundred; 千 qiān—thousand; 万 wàn—ten thousand; 零 líng—zero.

11. 人 rén

人 means ' person , people , human beings '.

这里有很多人。

There are many people here.

饭店里有多少人？

How many people are there in the restaurant ?

12. 个 ge

个 , which is a measure word for 人 and many other nouns , is given here for reference since it is very frequently used. 个 in 一个人 is a measure word for 人.

一个人

one person

那里有几个人？

How many people are there ?

13. 在……上 zài... shàng

上 is pronounced ' shang ' , meaning ' on ' here. The pattern 在...上 is often used. 在飞机上 means ' on board a plane '.

他在飞机上。

He is on board the plane.

我们在飞机上。

We are on board the plane.

大卫在座位上。

David is in his seat.

14. 公里 gōnglǐ

公 has many meanings such as ' state-owned , collective , male (animal) '.

这是一辆公车 , 不是私 (s — private) 车。

This is a state-owned car , not a private car.

那是公牛 , 不是母牛。

That is a bull , not a cow.

公尺 (a māch) , 公分 (a māfēn) , 公斤 (a mājīn)

里 here is a Chinese unit of distance , 500 meters long. 公里 means kilometer , equal to 2 Chinese li.

15. 多少 duōshǎo

多少 , an interrogative pronoun , means ' how many , how much '.

你有多少钱？

How much money do you have ?

那里有多少辆出租车？

How many taxis are there at that place ?

多少钱是你的？多少钱是他的？

How much money is yours ? How much is his ?

16. 钱 qián

钱 means 'money'.

你的钱

your money

李太太的钱

Mrs. Li's money

我们有钱。(yǒu—to have)

We have money.

李林山有钱。

Li Linshan has money.

马丁先生也有钱。

Mr. Martin also has money.

Note : The basic unit of currency in the People's Republic of China is 元(yuán) in written Chinese and 块(kuài) in spoken Chinese. One yuan consists of 10 角(jiǎo—10 cents) in written Chinese (毛máo—in spoken Chinese). One 角 consists of 10 分(fēn—cent).

17. 太 tài

太, an adverb, means 'very, too, more than enough'. When it is used with positive words, the phrase means a praise.

北京太大了!

How big Beijing is!

你太好了!

How nice you are!

这房间太大。

This room is too big.

这里的天气太不好了。

The weather here is too bad.

18. 贵 guì

贵 means 'expensive, valuable'.

红的花贵, 白的花便宜。

The red flower is expensive, and the white one is cheap.

贵的东西不一定是好的东西。

Expensive things are not necessarily all good.

19. 我坐过。Wǒ zuò guo.

I did have done. (some thing)

过 is a verbal suffix to indicate that the action is a past experience, i.e. it once happened in the past. For example:

我来过中国一次。

I have been to China once.

我去过西安。

I have been to Xi 'an.

我在美国吃过中餐。

I tasted Chinese food in the USA.

The negative form is formed by putting 没 before the predicate verb. It means the action has never happened before.

我没去过中国。

I have never been to China.

我没去过西安。

I have not been to Xi 'an.

我在美国没吃过中餐。

I have never had Chinese food in the USA.

20. 块 kuài

Here the measure word 块 stands for the basic unit of PRC currency, as used in spoken Chinese.

十块钱

10 yuan (of Chinese money)

我有三块钱。

I have 3 yuan.

21. 小姐 xiǎo jiě

小姐 means 'Miss'. The Miss who serves in a plane can be named 空姐 (kōng jiě — Air hostess).

李小姐是空姐。

Miss Li is an airhostess.

马丁小姐是空姐。

Miss Martin is an airhostess.

22. 一样 yíyàng

一样 an adjective, meaning 'same' is used in the pattern:

A 和 B + 一样

这里的天气和那里的天气一样。

The weather here is the same as there.

The negative form has 不 before 一样:

北京的天气和上海的天气不一样。

The weather in Beijing is different from that in Shanghai.

西安和上海不一样。

Xi 'an and Shanghai are different.

23. 相信 xi ngxin

相 means 'each other'.

2008 年我们要在北京相见。

We'll meet in Beijing in 2008.

他的父母相爱 50 多年。

His parents have lived in love for more than 50 years.

You know 信 means 'letter'.

我每月都要给女朋友写信。

I write a letter to my girl friend every month.

信 also means 'to believe' when functioning as a verb. See the following :

她说的话(huà—words)我信。

I believe what she said.

The combination 相信 means 'to believe ,to trust'. See the following :

你应该相信你自己。

You should trust yourself.

我相信我能学好汉语。

I believe that I can learn Chinese well.

24. 放心 fàngxin

放 means 'to put ,to place'. See the examples :

请你把鲜花放在这里。

Please place the fresh flowers here.

这些东西不能放在热的地方。

These things can not be placed in a hot place.

放 also means 'to let go'. See the following :

请你把他放了。

Please let him go.

牛先生把狗(g u—dog)放了出来。

Mr. Niu has let the dog come out.

心 means 'heart ,mind ,intention'. See the examples :

他不吃猪(zh —pig)心 吃猪肉。

He does not eat pig's heart ,but eats pork. .

他人在这里 ,可是心不在这里。

He himself is here ,but his mind is elsewhere.

你的心的好的 ,但是事情没做好。

Your intention were good ,but you didn't do the job well.

The combination 放心 means 'be assured'.

你放心 ,一切都会好的。

You can be assured that everything will be all right.

我对她不太放心。

I don't quite trust him.

请你放心 ,我会把事情做好。

Please trust me ,I can get the job done well.

25. 会 huì

会 has many meanings. As you know 会在 约会 means ' to meet '. 会 means ' meeting 'if functioning as a noun. If it functions as a main verb ,it means ' to know ,to be able to '. See the following :

我会英文 ,但是不会中文。

I know English , but I don 't know Chinese.

‘会 ’is used as an optative verb followed by a verb ,it means ' to be able to ,can '.

谁会开车 ?

Who can drive (a car) ?

他们会说德语 (Déy —German language)。

They can speak German.

26. 骗 piàn

骗 means ' to deceive ,to cheat '.

你不要骗人。

Don 't cheat other people.

他被他的朋友骗了。

He was cheated by his friend.

那个人骗了很多东西。

That person has cheated others out of many things.

现在骗人的人很多。

Nowadays there are many people who cheat others.

小心(xi ox n—be careful) ! 不要让人骗了。

Be careful ! Don 't be cheated by others.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



kūn chē

空车

taxi for hire

chū zū qì chē tǎn chē zhàn

出租汽车停车场

taxi stand

yuán ān l

2.00 元 / 公里

2.00 yuan/km.

第十三课 在出租车上 Zài Chū zū chē Shàng

Topic 13 In a Taxi



情境 SITUATION:

有一次马丁一家外出,回来时等了很久,才等到一辆出租车。坐进车后,与司机谈话。

One day, the Martins want to go back to their hotel. They have to wait for a long time before they get a taxi. Having got in the taxi, they start talking with the driver.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Zhèl de ch z ch dM shìguóji gMgs de ma ?

贝拉：这里的出租车都是国家公司的吗？

(word for word) here taxis all belong to state owned companies

S j : Y qián dM shì ,xiànzàibù dM shì. Y uxi shìgMgjia de ,

司机：以前都是，现在不都是。有些是公家的，

(word for word) in the past ,yes. Nowadays ,not all belongs some to the state ,
y uxi shìs rén de .

有些是私人的。

some are private

Bèil : GMgjia de duM ,háishìs rén de duM?

贝拉：公家的多，还是私人的多？

(word for word) belonging to the state more ,or private more

S j : Bú tài q ngchu. W xi ng k néng gMgjia de duM

司机：不太清楚。我想可能公家的多。

(word for word) I have no idea ,I think there should belonging to the state more

Bèil : Nín zhè liàng ch shìshéide ?

贝拉：您这辆车是谁的？

(word for word) your taxi belong to who

S j : Shìw zìj de .

司机：是我自己的。

(word for word) it belongs to me ,myself

nn : N bié méiwán-méili ode wèn le .

安妮：你别没完没了地问了。

(word for word) you don 't keep asking questions like that

Bèil : DuMwènwen ,búdàn néng duMli oji qíngkuàng ,

贝拉：多问问，不但能多了解情况，

(word for word) by asking more questions ,not only can more get information ,

érqi néng duMshuMHàny .

而且能多说汉语。

but also can more speak Chinese

Bella : Do all taxis here belong to state owned companies ?

Driver : In the past ,yes. Nowadays ,not all belongs to the state ,
some are private.

Bella : Are there more taxis belonging to the state or more are
private ?

Driver : I have no idea ,but I think there should be more taxis be-
longing to the state.

Bella : Who does your taxi belong to ?

Driver : It belongs to me ,myself.

Anne : Don 't keep asking questions like that.

Bella : By asking more questions ,I can not only get more infor-
mation ,but also can speak more Chinese.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 这里 zhèl

里 a nominal morpheme of locality , means ' inside '. It is often preceded by a noun
or pronoun ,e. g. :

那里(that place ,there) ,这里(this place ,here) ,哪里 (which place ,where) 家里(at
home) ,银行里 (in a bank).

里 is not used after a noun indicating a geographical place itself. It is wrong to say :
我在北京里。(W zài B ijng l.)

2. 出租 ch z

出租 ,a verb ,means ' to rent ,to hire '.

我要出租这房间。

I want to rent this room.

你出租什么 ?

What do you rent ?

3. 车 ch

means ' vehicle (car ,bus ,bike. . .) '.

你的车

your car

我有车。

I have a car.

4. 都是 dōu shì

Notice the position of 都 :

都 + verb 都是 (all are. . .)

我们都是美国人。

We all are Americans.

我们都去旅游。

All of us go to travel.

他们都吃中餐。

All of them have Chinese food.

都 + 不 + verb 都不是 (all not , no)

我们都不是美国人。

All of us are not Americans.

我们都不去旅游。

All of us do not travel.

他们都不吃中餐。

All of them do not have Chinese food.

5. 国家 guójiā

You know 国 means 'country, state' and 家 means 'family'. The combination 国家 means 'country, state'. See the following :

中国是世界 (shìjiè—the world) 上人口 (rénkǒu—population) 最多的国家。

China is the country that has the biggest population in the world.

他参观过很多国家。

He has visited many countries.

这个公司是国家的 , 不是私人的。

This company belongs to the state. It's not private.

6. 公司 gōngsī

You know 公 means 'metric, public, fair'. 司 means 'to take charge of, department'. The combination 公司 means 'company'.

这个公司是美国的 , 不是英国的。

This is an American company, not a British company.

现在中国有很多国家的公司 , 也有很多私人的公司。

Nowadays, China has many private companies as well as many state-owned companies.

谁在这个德国公司里工作 ?

Who works in the German company ?

7. 以前 yǐ qián

以前 means 'before, in the past'. 以前 is often used before certain localizers to form compound localizers, such as :

三天以前 , 他在北京。

He was in Beijing 3 days ago.

上午八点以前,李先生在家里。

Mr. Li is at home before 8 am.

More examples are given below :

离开这里以前,请你给他打电话。

Call him before leaving here.

丁先生下午三点以前回来。

Mr. Ding will be back before 3 pm.

8. 现在 xiànzài

现在 means 'now, this moment'.

现在是几月?

What month is it now?

现在是几号?

What date is it now?

现在是几点?

What is the time now?

9. 不都是 bù dōu shì

不 + 都 + verb 不都是 (not all, some of...)

我们不都是美国人。我是,他们不是。

Not all of us are Americans. I am, but they are not.

我们不都去旅游。他去,我们不去。

Not all of us go to travel. He does, but we don't.

他们不都吃中餐。一个人吃,两个人不吃。

Not all of them eat Chinese food. One does, but the other two don't.

10. 有些.....有些.....y u xi ... y u xi ...

Some ... and some...

'有 + 些 (the plural measure word)' means 'part of...', indicating an indefinite number, but one. See the following:

有些人去上海,有些人去西安。

Some people go to Shanghai and some go to Xi'an.

有些电影好,有些(电影)不好。

Some of the films are good and some are not.

11. 公家 gōngjiā

公家 means 'the state, the public, the organization'. It is an antonym to 私人.

我不会拿公家的东西。

I would not take any thing that belongs to the state/organization.

有些是私人的东西,有些是公家的东西。

Some of the things are private, and some belong to the state.

12. 私人 s rén

私 means 'private, personal, selfish'. See the following:

这是一封私信。

This is a personal (private) letter.

他做这件事,不但为(wèi—for)私,而且也为公。

He has done this job not only for his own interest, but also for the interest of the public.

The combination 私人 means 'private'. See the following:

这是一辆私人出租车,不是公家的。

This is a private taxi. It doesn't belong to the state.

这是我私人的东西,请你不要拿。

These are my personal belongings. Don't take them away, please.

13. 还是 hái shì

还是 'or', is used between two alternatives to form an alternative question.

你要中餐还是西餐?

Do you want Chinese food or western food?

你是大卫·马丁还是李大龙?

Are you David Martin or Li Dalong?

这是中餐还是西餐?

Is this Chinese food or western food?

14. 清楚 qīngchū

清 means 'clear, clearly'. See the following:

这个湖(hú—lake)里的水,非常清。

The water in this lake is very clear.

这个问题他没说明。

He failed to explain the matter clearly.

看比赛的人太多了,我不可能数清多少人。

There are too many people watching the game, I can't count the number of people exactly.

楚 means 'clear, neat' and it is not used alone in modern Chinese. The combination

清楚 means 'clear, clearly'. See the following:

你写的字不清楚。

The characters you wrote are not clear.

他的发音(f y n—pronunciation, articulation)很清楚。

His pronunciation is very clear.

15. 可能 kěnéng

You know 可 means 'can, may' and 能 'be able'. The combination 可能 means 'maybe, possible, possibility'. See the following:

他们可能明天上午10点来看你。

They may come to see you at 10 a.m. tomorrow.

他不会中文,不可能用中文写信。

He doesn't know Chinese, so it is impossible for him to write a letter in Chinese.

她为什么没来？我想有两种可能：一个是她病了；一个是她忘了。

Why hasn't she come yet? I think there may be two possibilities: one is that she is ill; the other is that she has forgotten to come.

16. 这 zhè

这 means 'this'.

这是我太太。

This is my wife.

17. 谁的 shuí de

谁 has appeared many times so far, meaning 'who, whom'. (Note that shui and shéi are both correct only used pronunciations and Hamyu Pinyin Spellings for the same character).

谁细心？

Who is careful?

你要见谁？

Whom do you want to see?

的 is a structural particle, which is attached to a notional word or phrase to show possession, modification, etc. by a person or thing.

这个是我的，那个是你的。

This is mine and that is yours.

这是吃的，那是喝的。

This is for eating food, that is for drinking (a beverage).

来中国学习汉语的很多。

There are many (people) who come to China to learn Chinese.

The combination 谁的 means 'whose'.

这包儿是谁的？

Whose bag is this?

18. 自己 zì jǐ

自 means 'self'. 己 means 'oneself'. The combination 自己 means 'oneself one's own'.

我自己去那里。

I go there by myself.

你的东西你自己拿。

Take your things by yourself.

自己找自己的行李。

Everyone is looking for his own baggage.

19. 别 bié

别 means 'other—别的'. Here it functions as an adverb meaning 'do not'.

这节目不好，请你别看。

This performance is not good , don 't see it.

别客气 ,请坐。

Don 't be too polite , take a seat , please.

20. 没完没了 méi wán méi li o

You know that 没 means ' not ' , 完 means ' to finish , to end , be over ' , 了 (li o means ' to complete , to end ' .) The combination 没完没了 is an idiom meaning ' endlessly ' often used in a complaint.

他没完没了地每天跟 (g n—with) 我要钱。

He asks endlessly for money from me every day.

白先生没完没了地叫我给他买东西。

Mr. Bai asks me endlessly to buy things for him.

21. 地 dì (de)

You know 地 means ' land , earth ' in 地方 (dì fāng—place) and 地球 (dì qiú—the globe). Now , 地 pronounced ' de ' , functions as a particle occurring after an adverbial adjunct. See the following :

请你一个一个地写。

Please write one by one.

他们很快地走着。

They are walking fast.

对不起 ,我听不懂 ,请你慢慢 (màn mǎn—slow , slowly) 地说。

Sorry , I can 't hear you clearly. Speak slowly , please.

22. 不但……而且…… búdàn... érqi ...

'不但...而且...' shows that further meaning is focused on the premise mentioned in the first clause. '不但' is put in the first clause and '而且' in the second.

他不但会说英语 ,而且会法语。

Not only can he speaks English , but also French.

学好汉语不但要多说 ,多听 ,而且要多看 ,多写。

To learn Chinese well , one not only needs to speak more , and listen more , but also read more and write more.

他不但吃了很多饭 ,而且喝 (h —drink) 了很多酒。

He not only ate a big meal , but also drank a lot (of liquor).

23. 能 néng

能 means ' to be able , to be possible , can '.

你能说汉语吗 ?

Can you speak Chinese ?

他没有时间 (shíjiān—time) ,他不能给你拿行李。

He has no time and he cannot collect the baggage for you .

24. 了解 li oji

了 can function as a verb which is pronounced 'li o '. It means ' to finish ' , to complete , to settle '. See the following :

这件事情还没了呢。

This matter hasn 't been settled yet.

对不起 ,我两天做不了这件事。

Sorry , I can 't finish this work in two days.

解 means ' to unite '. See the following :

请你解这个扣子(k uzi—button)。

Please undo this button.

But both 了 and 解 'mean ' understand 'the combination 了解 means ' to get to know , to comprehend , to know '. See the following :

他很了解李先生。

He knows Mr. Li very well.

我想了解一下中国的长城 ,你能告诉(gàosu—tell)我吗 ?

I want to know about the Great Wall in China. Can you tell me about it ?

我非常了解你的困难(kùnnan—difficulty)。

I know your difficulty thoroughly.

25. 情况 qíngkuàng

You know 情 means ' feeling 'and it is often used with other words. See the following :

人情...human feeling(那个人没有人情...That person is heartless/ruthless.)

民情...condition of the people(他不了解民情...He fails to keep abreast of public feeling.)

心情...mood , frame of mind(他的心情很好...He is in a good mood.)

爱情...love(他们有很深[(sh n—deep)]的爱情...They have a deep love for each other.)

况 means ' situation 'and it can 't be used alone in modern Chinese. The combination 情况 means ' condition , situation '. See the following :

这种情况很好。

Such a condition is good.

那里的情况非常危险。

The situation there is very dangerous.

他们的生活(sh nghuó—live)情况怎么样 ?

How are their living conditions ?

在这种情况下 ,我不能去那里。

Under such circumstances , I can 't go there.

26. 说 shuō

说 , as a verb , has appeared many times so far , meaning ' to speak '.

请你不要说英语 ,我不懂。

Please don 't speak English because I don 't understand.

27. 汉语 Hànyǔ

汉 here refers to the Han nationality in China . 语 means ‘ language , speech ’.

The combination 汉语 means ‘ the language of the Han nationality in China ’referring to ‘ the Chinese language ’. 汉语 has appeared many times so far , so no more examples are given here.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



f piào

发票

receipt

jiān dū diàn huà

监督电话

supervision phone

diàn huà k

电话卡

phone card

第十四课 请吃饭 Q ǐng Chī Fàn

Topic14 An Invitation for Dinner



情境 SITUATION:

白林现在是一家百货公司经理,也是马丁的中国朋友。马丁一家正好遇上白林。白林邀请马丁一家吃晚饭。

Bai Lin, a Chinese friend of Mr. Martin's, is the manager of a department store. The Martins meet him and Bai Lin invites them to dinner.

对话 DIALOGUE

BáiLín : Wèi ,Dàwèi ,n h o !

白林 : 喂 ,大卫 ,你好 !

(word for word) hello ,David ,you good

Dàwèi : A ,BáiLín !Méixi ngdào zài zhèr pèngshàng n .

大卫 : 啊 ,白林 !没 想到 在这儿 碰上 你。

(word for word) oh ,Bai Lin didn 't expect here to meet you

BáiLín : W zàizhèl gMgzu ,shì jngl . Nmen shénme shíhou lái de ,

白林 : 我在这里 工作 ,是 经理。你们 什么 时候 来的 ,

(word for word) I here work ,I am the manager. you when did come ,

zhù n r ?

住 哪儿 ?

staying where

Dàwèi : S nti nqián láide ,zhù zài“ Huáy u Fàndiàn ”.

大卫 : 三 天 前 来的 ,住 在“ 华友 饭店 ”。

(word for word) three days ago came ,staying at the Huayou Hotel

BáiLín : W z o jiù x wàng jiàn n men le .

白林 : 我 早就 希望 见 你们了。

(word for word) I for a long time expecting see you

W qng n mench zhMgc n ,h máotáiji .

我 请 你们 吃 中 餐 ,喝 茅台酒。

I invite you to eat Chinese food ,drink Maotai

Dàwèi : Tàimáf n n le .

大卫 : 太 麻烦 你了。

(word for word) too much trouble you

BáiLín : H o bù róngyìy u le zhè ge jhuì . Bù máf n .

白林 : 好 不 容易 有了 这个 机会。不 麻烦。

(word for word) very hard to have this chance. No trouble.

Xngq w w nsh ng q di n ,w jì n men .

星期五 晚上 七 点 ,我 接 你们。

Friday evening at 7 ,I meet you

Dàwèi : H o ,w tóngyì. Xièxie ,zhMiw jiàn !

大卫 : 好 ,我 同意。谢谢 ,周五 见 !

(word for word) OK ,I agree ,thanks ,Friday see

英文 ENGLISH:

Bai Lin : Hello , David , how are you ?

David : Oh , it 's you , Bai Lin. I didn 't expect to meet you here.

Bai Lin : I work here. I am the manager. When did you come and where are you staying ?

David : We came three days ago. We are staying at the Huayou Hotel.

Bai Lin : I have been expecting to see you for a long time. I would like to invite you to eat Chinese food and drink Maotai.

David : That would be too much trouble for you.

Bai Lin : It 's very hard to have this chance. No trouble at all. See you at 7 on Friday evening.

David : OK , I agree , thanks ! See you then.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 喂 wèi

喂 , an interjection , means ' hello '. It is used as a greeting at the beginning of a telephone conversation.

喂 , 你是王明吗 ?

Hello , are you Wang Ming ?

2. 没 méi

没 , an adverb , means ' not ' exclusively to negate 有 . It may be used as the short form for 没有 .

我没钱。

I have no money.

她没票。

She has no ticket.

If 没 is placed before an action verb , it indicates the action did not happen or has not yet happened.

我没吃中餐。

I did not eat Chinese food.

演出没开始。

The performance has not started yet.

3. 想到 xi nadào

想 as we have learned, means 'to want, to think of, to miss'. Here 到 as a complement indicates the result of the action 想. 想到 means 'expected'. 没想到 means 'unexpected'.

我想到了李先生今天要来。

I expected that Mr. Li would come today.

他没想到我今天去北京。

He did not expect that I would go to Beijing today.

4. 碰 pèng

碰 means 'to meet with, to run into, to touch'.

路上你碰上了谁?

Whom did you meet on the way?

请不要碰那些花。

Don't touch those flowers.

她碰到了很多困难。

She is confronted by many difficulties.

5. 工作 gōngzuò

工作 means 'to work' as a verb or means 'work' as a noun. 人员 means 'personnel'. The combination of them 工作人员 means 'the working staff', and it means 'border-crossing staff' or 'customs officer' here.

他们是海关的工作人员。

They are border-crossing staff.

6. 经理 jīnglǐ

经 means 'to pass through, to experience'.

飞机从上海起飞, 经北京到西安。

The plane took off from Shanghai, passed through Beijing and arrived in Xi'an.

他经历了不少事情。

He experienced a lot of things.

理 means 'reason, truth, to put in order, to pay attention to'. See the following:

你没理, 他有理。

You are the one who is wrong and he is the one who is right.

那个人不好。不要理他。

That person is not good. Don't pay attention to him.

请你把这些东西理好。

Please put these things in good order.

But 经 also means 'manage' and the combination 经理 means 'manager'. See the following:

商店经理在办公室(bàngōngshì—office)。

The manager of this shop is in his office.

有问题请您问经理。

If you have any questions ask the manager.

7. 你们什么时候来的？N men shénme shíhou lái de ?

When did you come ?

‘的’ at the end of a sentence (a statement or question) is used to emphasize the time , place , manner of an action. 是 is often used in coordination with 的 , but it is optional. For example :

我(是)昨天来的。(time)

I came here yesterday.

他(是)从美国来的。(place)

He came from the U. S. A. .

我们(是)坐飞机去的。(manner)

We went there by air.

Note that 是 always precedes the element it modifies.

8. 三天前 sān tiān qián

The locative words 前 here means ‘ ago ’. The phrase ‘ 三天前 ’ means ‘ three days ago ’. 前 can also be placed before ‘ 三天 ’ , but 前三天 means the ‘ first three days of a period of time ’. See the examples :

三天前他来北京。

He came to Beijing three days ago.

他想在北京住十天。前三天他看朋友 ,后七天他学汉语。

He wants to stay in Beijing for 10 days. He will spend the first three days visiting friends and the remaining seven days learning Chinese.

9. 早 zǎo

早 has appeared in 早上 (morning). 早 , as an adjective , means ‘ early ’. Its antonym is 晚 (late). See the following :

他们从早到晚学习汉语。

They study Chinese from morning till night.

早 can also function as an adverbial , meaning ‘ long ago , in advance ’ , e. g. :

他早走了。

He went away a long time ago.

火车早到 10 分钟 (fānzǎo—minute)。

The train arrived ten minutes earlier.

早 also can function as a complement.

他来早了。

He came earlier (than expected) .

10. 希望 xīwàng

希 means ‘ to hope ’ but it is not often used alone in modern Chinese.

望 means ‘ to hope , to look over ’. See the following :

他望着东边的大山。

He is looking at the big mountain in the east.

望你快快回信。

Hope you write back soon.

The combination 希望 means 'to hope, hope'. See the following:

他们都希望 2008 年来北京。

All of them hope to come to Beijing in 2008.

他们的希望是 2008 年来北京。

Their hope is to come to Beijing in 2008.

11. 喝 h

喝 means 'to drink'.

我不喝茅台,喝啤酒。

I don't drink Maotai, but I drink beer.

我们每天要喝很多水。

We drink a lot of water every day.

美国人喜欢喝咖啡(k f i—coffee),中国人喜欢喝茶(chá—tea)

Americans like drinking coffee. Chinese like drinking tea.

12. 茅台酒 Máotáijiǔ

茅台 is a place in Guizhou Province, in southwest China, and it is famous for producing good Chinese liquor. 酒 has appeared many times so far, meaning 'wine or any alcoholic drink'. 茅台酒 is one of the most famous spirits in China.

13. 太麻烦你了。 tài máfan nǐ le.

That would be too much trouble for you.

This is a polite expression used when being invited or done a favor by the other party in a conversation. For example:

A: 你不认识那个地方?我带你去。

You don't know the place? I'll take you there.

B: 太麻烦你了。

That would be too much trouble for you.

麻烦 máfan

麻 means 'hemp' or 'numb'.

这件衣服(y fu—a piece of clothing)是麻的。

This cloth is made of hemp.

他坐了一个小时,腿(tu—leg)麻了。

He has been sitting for an hour and feels numbness in his legs.

烦 means 'be annoyed, to trouble'. See the following:

请你不要烦我。

Don't bother me.

你烦什么?

What are you getting annoyed about?

But 麻烦 also means 'pockmarked, rough, coarse' and 麻烦 means 'trouble, troubled'.
办这些手续很麻烦。

It's rather troublesome to get through all these formalities.

你不要自己找麻烦。

Don't look for trouble yourself.

她们不怕麻烦, 服务周到。

They spare no pains to provide good service.

14. 好不容易 hǎo bù róngyì

好 here functions as an adverb meaning 'very'.

参观了一天以后(yǐ hòu—after), 我好累啊。

After visiting for a whole day, I am very tired.

学好汉语, 好困难啊。

How difficult it is to learn Chinese well.

这里的冬天好冷啊。

It is very cold here in winter.

容 means 'to hold, appearance, look'. See the following:

这个房间能容 10 个人。

This room can hold 10 people.

明天我们参观北京市容(shìróng—the appearance of a city)。

We'll go sight-seeing in Beijing tomorrow.

易 means 'easy'.

学好英文真不易。

It is really not easy to learn English well.

The combination 容易 means 'easy'.

你要先回答容易的问题。

You should answer the easy questions first.

说容易, 做就难了。

It is easier to say than to do. (Easier said than done.)

15. 晚上 wǎnshàng

The position of the time word 晚上. 晚上 can be placed either before or after the subject of the sentence and before the main verb (predicate).

晚上我们去饭店吃饭。

We are going to a restaurant for dinner this evening.

我们晚上去饭店吃饭。

We will go to a restaurant for dinner this evening.

16. 同意 tóngyì

同 means 'same, together with'.

张先生和李先生不同。

Mr. Zhang is different from Mr. Li.

我同林先生去参观学校。

I visited the school together with Mr. Lin.

意 means 'idea, intention, meaning'. The combination 同意 means 'to agree, to share the same idea'. See the following:

他同意后天去那个地方。

He agrees to go there the day after tomorrow.

你说的我都同意。

I quite agree with what you said.

17. 周五 zhōu wǔ

You learned 周 in the word '周到'. Here 周 means '星期' (xīngqī — week) and it is more often used in written Chinese. See the following:

周一——星期一

周二——星期二

周三——星期三

周四——星期四

周五——星期五

周六——星期六

周日——星期日

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



fàn diàn

饭店

hotel / restaurant

fàn guǎn

饭馆

restaurant

jǐ lóu

酒楼

restaurant

jǐ jiā

酒家

restaurant

第十五课 做客 Zu kè(1)

Topic 15 Being a Guest(1)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家在门外敲门,白林开门,请马丁一家进屋。

The Martins have come to visit Bai Lin in his home. Bai Lin invites them to come in.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Bái Lín xiānshēng zài jiā ma ?

大卫 : 白林先生在家吗 ?

(word for word) Mr. Bai Lin in home

Bái Lín : Huānyíng , qǐng jìn ! (Bái Lín kāi mén .)

白林 : 欢迎 , 请进 ! (白林开门。)

(word for word) welcome ! Come in , please (Bai Lin opens the door.)

Bèi lā : Mā , nín kàn zhè yuànzi zhēn hǎo kàn .

贝拉 : 妈 , 您看这院子真好看。

(word for word) mom , you see this courtyard really beautiful

Bái lín : Zhè jiù shì Běijīng de sìhéyuàn .

白林 : 这就是北京的四合院。

(word for word) this is Beijing style quadrangle

Dàwèi : Zhè zhǒng zhùzhái hěn duō ma ?

大卫 : 这种住宅很多吗 ?

(word for word) this kind houses very many

Bái Lín : Yǐqián hěn duō , xiànzài yuè lái yuè shǎo le .

白林 : 以前很多 , 现在越来越少了。

(word for word) before very many , now fewer and fewer

英文 ENGLISH

David : Is Mr. Bai Lin 's home ?

Bai Lin : Welcome ! Come in , please. (Bai Lin opens the door.)

Bella : Mom , this courtyard is really beautiful.

Bai Lin : This is what is called a Beijing style quadrangle.

David : Are there many houses like this ?

Bai Lin : There were many before , but now they 're fewer and fewer.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 做客 zu kè

做 means 'to do , to be '. 客 means ' guest '. The combination of them 做客 means ' to be a guest '.

今晚我去史密斯先生家做客。

I will visit Mr. Smith 's family tonight.

她不想去你家做客。

She won 't visit your family

2. 妈 m

妈 or 妈妈 means ' mother ' which is more often used in spoken Chinese.

刘山的妈妈今年八十。

Liu Shan 's mother is 80 years old this year.

贝拉的妈妈是安妮。

Bella 's mother is Anne.

3. 进 jìn

进 means ' to come in , to enter '.

我没有空儿。我不进你家了。

I won 't go into your house. I don 't have time.

请进(来) !

Come in , please !

4. 院子 yuànzi

院子 means ' courtyard '.

我家的院子不大。

The courtyard of my house is not big.

5. 好看 h okàn

好 means ' good , nice '. 看 means ' to look at , to see '. The combination of them 好看 means ' good-looking , beautiful '.

这个地方真好看。

This place is really beautiful.

你的女儿真好看。

Your daughter is really beautiful.

不能为负面。 See the following :

这张生日卡真不好看。

This birthday card is ugly.

6. 就 jiù

The adverb 就 mean ' just ', and is used to give emphasis on a fact that is known to the other party of conversation. Compare the following :

这是北京的四合院。——这就是北京的四合院。
 这是我的朋友王先生。——这就是我的朋友王先生。

7. 四合院 sìhéyuàn

quadrangular compound

Here 四 indicates 'four sides'. 合 means 'to close'. 院 means 'courtyard'. The combination of them 四合院 means 'quadrangle compound'. It is a typical, traditional house, especially in Beijing, with rooms on four sides of a courtyard.

北京有很多四合院。

There are many quadrangles in Beijing.

这个四合院真漂亮。

This quadrangle is really beautiful.

8. 种 zhǒng

种 means 'kind, sort, type', functioning as a measure word here.

这种人这个地方很多。

There are many of this kind of people in this place.

商场里有很多种电视。

There are various kinds of TVs in the plaza

9. 住宅 zhùzhái

住 means 'to live, to stay'. 宅 means 'house, residence'. The combination of them 住宅 means 'residence, dwelling'.

这就是我们的住宅。

This is our residence.

那个地方有很多新住宅。

There are many new houses there.

10. 以前 yǐ qián

We discussed '以前' in Topic 10. More examples are given below:

离开这里以前, 请你给他打电话。

Call him before leaving here.

丁先生下午三点以前回来。

Mr. Ding will be back before 3 pm.

11. 越来越 yuè lái yuè ...

more and more...

越来越 is used to modify an adjective and the phrase thus formed functions as different elements in sentences:

越来越多——旅游的人越来越多。(predicate)

越来越少——人越来越少。

越来越好——北京越来越好。

12. 少 shǎo

少 means ‘ few , little ’.

他的钱很少。

He has little money.

请你少吃一点儿。

Please eat a bit less.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



dà jiē
大街 **Avenue**

lù
路 **Road**

第十六课 做客 Zu kè(2)

Topic 16 Being a Guest(2)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家人进入白林家客厅,见一桌酒席已经摆好,但白林爱人还在厨房做菜。安妮把礼物交给白林。

When they enter the dining room, the Martins find that dinner is already on the table, but Bai Lin's wife is still cooking in the kitchen. Anne hands the gift to Bai Lin.

对话 DIALOGUE

BáiLín : N men tài kèqì le ,háiná shénme lǚwù .

白林 : 你们太客气了 ,还拿 什么 礼物。

(word for word) you very kind , shouldn't bring anything

Dàwèi : Xiǎo yìsi ,biǎoshì yíxià xièyì .

大卫 : 小 意思 ,表示 一下谢意。

(word for word) a very small gift , token a appreciation

BáiLín : Xièxie . Qǐngzuò . Háizibú zàijiā .

白林 : 谢谢。请坐。孩子不在家。

(word for word) thank please be seated. the kids are not at home

Wǒ àiren zhèng zài chúfáng máng zhe ne .

我 爱人 正在 厨房 忙 着呢。

My wife in the kitchen is still busy

Bèilā : A ,zhème duō cài ,háizài zuǒ ne ?

贝拉 : 啊 ,这 么 多 菜 ,还在 做 呢 ?

(word for word) a , many dishes still cooking more

BáiLín : Méishénme ,zhǐshì jiǎ chángfàn .

白林 : 没 什么 ,只是 家常饭。

(word for word) it's nothing. All are just home-style food

Ānní : Shì ,wǒ zǎo jiù tīngshuō Zhōngguó rén fēi cháng hào kè .

安妮 : 是啊 ,我 早 就 听说 , 中 国 人 非 常 好 客。

(word for word) Ah , I just have heard. Chinese people very hospitable

BáiLín : Lǎo péngyou ma ! Nándé !

白林 : 老 朋友 嘛 ! 难得 !

(word for word) old friends. hard to get

Bèilā : (wánxiàode) Chī bù wán , kě yǐ ná zǒu ma ?

贝拉 : (玩 笑 地) 吃 不 完 , 可 以 拿 走 吗 ?

(word for word) (Jokingly) can't finish , may take them

英文 ENGLISH:

Bai Lin : It 's very kind of you ,but you really shouldn 't bring anything.

David : It 's a very small gift ,only a token of appreciation.

Bai Lin : Thank you very much. Please be seated. The kids are not at home. My wife is still busy cooking in the kitchen.

Bella : You have cooked so many dishes and your wife is still cooking more.

Bai Lin : It 's nothing. All are just home-style food.

Anne : Ah ,just as I have heard. Chinese people are very hospitable.

Bai Lin : We are old friends. This is a rare chance for us to meet each other.

Bella : (Jokingly) May we take them home if we can 't finish ?

注释 :|||▶▶

1. 还拿什么礼物

You really shouldn 't bring anything

什么 in this sentence does not mean ' what ' , instead , it precedes a noun , giving the sentence a negative sense. Here the sentence is used as a declination when receiving a gift.

2. 小意思 xi o yìsi

小 means ' small , little , young ' . See the following :

这个房间很小。

This room is small.

你比我小一岁 (suì—year of age)。

You are one year younger than me.

意 means ' meaning , idea ' . 思 means ' train of thought ' . The combination 意思 means ' meaning ' . See the following :

这个汉字的意思是什么 ?

What 's the meaning of this Chinese character ?

The combination 小意思 means ' a small token of one 's regard , nothing important ' .

这是我的一点小意思 给你做个纪念。

This is a small token of my esteem for you as a little keepsake.

做这件事小意思,一点儿不难。

To do this job is nothing to me, it is very easy.

有意思 means 'interesting'. For example:

这本书很有意思,那本书没有意思。

This book is interesting, but that book is not interesting.

3. 表示 bi oshì

表 has many meanings, such as 'watch, table, to express'. See the following:

这是我的(手)表。

This is my watch.

让我看看参观的时间表。

Show me the schedule for the visit.

示 means 'to show, to notify' which is not commonly used alone in modern Chinese.

The combination 表示 means 'to express, expression'. See the following:

我对你表示感谢。

I express my thanks to you.

这是一种友好(y u h o—friendly)表示。

This is an expression of friendship.

4. 谢意 xièyì

You know 谢 means 'to thank'. See the following:

你不要谢我,应该谢他。

You should thank him, not me.

意 means 'meaning'. The combination 谢意 means 'thanks, gratitude, appreciation' functioning as a noun.

我要好好向(xiàng—towards)您表示感谢。

I should express my gratitude to you.

5. 请坐 qǐng zuò

请 has appeared many times meaning 'to invite, please'. 坐 means 'to sit'. The combination 请坐 means 'to sit down, to have a seat'.

6. 孩子 hái zi

孩 means 'child'. See the following:

他有一个男孩,一个女孩。

He has a boy and a girl.

Here 子 functions as a noun suffix. The combination 孩子 means 'son, child'.

他们是谁家的孩子?

From which family are these children?

7. 在家 zài jiā

在 has appeared many times as a verb, meaning 'to be in, at, on, exist'.

王先生在香港,不在上海。

Mr. Wang is in Hong Kong , not in Shanghai.

在 also can function as a preposition.

我妈妈在中国旅游。

My mother is traveling in China.

家 has appeared many times as a noun , meaning ‘ family , a specialist in a certain field ’.

她家里有两个画家。

There are two painters in his family.

在家 means ‘ be at home ’.

马太太去看电影(diànyǐng—film)了,不在家。

Mrs. Ma has gone to a movie , she is not at home.

8. 正在 zhèngzài

The adverb 正(在) indicates that the action is in progress and at the end of the sentence , the modal particle 呢 is often used in coordination. For example :

他们在吃饭呢。

They are having their meal.

马丁一家在等车呢。

The Martins are waiting for the bus.

9. 爱人 àirén

爱 means ‘ to love , to like , be fond of ’. See the following :

我爱你。

I love you.

我爱北京。

I love Beijing.

他爱吃中餐。

He likes eating Chinese food.

You know 人 means ‘ person ’. The combination 爱人 means ‘ husband or wife ’.

他爱人会说汉语。

His wife can speak Chinese.

10. 厨房 chúfáng

厨 means ‘ kitchen ’. 房 means ‘ room ’. The combination 厨房 means ‘ kitchen ’. See the following :

我家的厨房太小。

The kitchen in my house is too small.

11. 忙 máng

忙 means ‘ be busy , be busy with / at ’. See the following :

我现在非常忙,请你不要来看我。

I am very busy now. Don't come to see me , please.

您现在忙什么呢?

What are you busy with now?

12. 着 zhe

着 a suffix, is attached to a verb to indicate a continuous state, e. g. :

他们穿着背心。

They are wearing undershirts.

我们没穿着背心。

We are not wearing undershirts.

李小姐吃着饭呢。

Miss Li is eating her meal.

王先生在长城上走着。

Mr. Wang is walking on the Great Wall.

13. 这么 zhème

这 has appeared many times, meaning 'this'. 么, a suffix, has appeared in 什么 (shénme—what), 怎么 (z nme—how). The combination 这么 means 'this way, like this.'

天气这么冷,你要多穿衣服(y fu—clothes).

It is so cold, you should put on more clothes.

这个汉字这么写不对。

It's wrong to write the character this way.

14. 家常 jī cháng

家 has appeared in 我家 画家 meaning 'family, expert'. 常 as an adjective, means 'ordinary, normal, common'.

这是常事。

This is common thing.

常 often functions as an adverb, meaning 'often'.

画家方明常去长城画画儿。

Fang Ming, a painter, often goes to the Great Wall to paint pictures.

常 can be duplicated as 常常, meaning 'often, frequently'.

我爸爸常常请他的学生吃饭。

My father often invites his students to dinner.

The combination 家常 means 'the daily life of a family, domestic trivia'.

我们吃的是家常饭。

The meal we have is home-style food.

这些老人没大事,天天谈(tán—to talk about)家常。

These old people have nothing important to do. They just chitchat every day.

他们常常一起谈家常。

They often come together and talk about everyday matters.

我非常喜欢吃我妈妈做的家常饭。

I like my mother's home-style cooking very much.

15. 听说 tīngshuō

听 means 'to listen to , to hear '.

你听 , 下雨了吗 ?

Listen , is it raining ?

说 , as we know , means ' to say , to speak '.

您想说什么 ?

What do you want to say ?

请他们多说中文。

Tell them to speak Chinese more.

The combination ' 听说 ' means ' to hear what is spoken by others '.

我们听说北京冬天很冷。

We have heard that it is very cold in winter in Beijing.

16. 非常 fēicháng

非 means ' not ' here. We learned 常 (often) before. Here it means ' common , normal '. The combination of them 非常 means ' very , extraordinary , unusual ' functioning as an adverb which is often placed before adjectives.

这个人非常好。

This person is very nice.

这里冬天非常冷。

It is very cold here in winter.

那个地方非常大。

That place is very big.

17. 好客 hàokè

好 as an adjective , has appeared frequently. But 好 as a verb , has appeared for the first time , and it should be pronounced ' hào ' in the fourth tone , meaning ' to love , to like , to be fond of , to be liable to '.

她好看电影。

She is fond of seeing movies.

客 has appeared in 客人 (kèrén—guest) , 客气 (kèqi—courteous , polite).

The combination 好客 as an adjective , means ' hospitable '.

林奶奶 (lín nai—grand mother) 非常好客 , 我们都喜欢她。

Grandma Lin is very hospitable and we all love her very much .

好 means ' to like , to love , be fond of ' and it is pronounced ' hào ' in the fourth tone.

我好喝酒。

I like drinking.

她好看中国电影。

She is fond of watching Chinese movies.

The combination 好客 means ' be hospitable '.

李先生很好客。我们都喜欢他。

Mr. Li is very hospitable and we all like him.

18. 老 lǎo

老, as an adjective, means 'old, close'. See the following:

我和他是老朋友。

He and I are close friends.

王先生好像比林太太老。

Mr. Wang looks older than Mrs. Wang.

我们都是老朋友。

We all are old friends.

我们在老地方见。

We'll meet at the old place.

老, as an adverb, means 'always, for a long time'. See the following:

他老穿那件上衣。

He has always been wearing that jacket.

我老写不好那个汉字。

I have always written that character badly.

他老吃中餐, 不吃西餐。

He always has Chinese food and never has western food.

19. 没什么 méi shénme

When being praised, one usually says something to deny it to show modesty. Here 什么 is used in negative sentences to indicate that 'nothing is special'.

20. 嘛 ma

嘛 can be written as 么. It's a particle indicating that something is obvious.

外国人嘛, 你汉语说不好没关系。

It doesn't matter if you cannot speak Chinese well since you are a foreigner.

21. 难得 nándé

难 means 'difficult'. 得, as a verb, means 'to gain'. The combination 难得 means 'hard to get'.

这是一个难得的机会。

This is a rare chance.

这种书很难得到。

It's hard to get this kind of book.

22. 完 wán

完 as a verb, means 'to come to an end, to be over'.

篮球比赛完了。

The basketball match is over.

完 is often used as a complement.

吃完早饭以后, 我去找你。

I am going to see you after breakfast.

23. 拿走 ná z u

拿, a verb, means 'to take, to hold'.

请你拿这些东西吧。

Take these things, please.

走 has appeared many times, means 'to go away'. It can be used as a complement.

The combination 拿走 means 'to take something away'

这是我的书, 你不要拿走。

This is my book, don't take it away.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



hú t ng

胡同

hutong / lane

xi o q

小区

area

第十七课 吃饭 Ch Fàn(早点)

Topice17 Having a Meal(Breakfast)



情境 SITUATION:

早晨八点左右。大卫·马丁一人站在一家卖早点的饭店里，服务员过来问他吃什么。

Around 8 am ,Mr. Martin is in a restaurant for breakfast. A waiter comes and asks him what he would like to have.

对话 DIALOGUE

Fúwùyuán : Xī nsheng ,nín chī di nǐ shénme ?

服务员 : 先生 ,您吃点儿 什么 ?

(word for word) Mr. you eat a bit what

Dàwèi : Yóutiáo hé d ōu jī ng.

大卫 : 油条 和 豆浆 。

(word for word) deep-fried dough stick and soy bean milk

Fúwùyuán : Yī kuài èr . Nín hái yào shénme ?

服务员 : 一块二。您 还 要 什么 ?

(word for word) one yuan two you also want what

Dàwèi : Bú yào le ,xièxie .

大卫 : 不要了 ,谢谢。

(word for word) not want thanks

英文 ENGLISH

Waiter : Sir , what do you want to eat ?

David : A deep-fried dough stick and soy bean milk.

Waiter : One yuan and twenty cents. Anything else ?

David : No , thanks.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 点儿 di nr

点儿 a measure word , means ‘ some , a small amount ’ , which is used after a verb to moderate the tone , e. g. :

您要点儿什么 ?

What do you want ? (What can I do for you ?)

您给点儿什么 ?

What do you give ?

您换点儿什么 ?

What do you exchange ?

‘ — ’ can be added before ‘ 点儿 ’ sometimes.

您吃一点儿什么 ?

2. 油条 yóutiáo

油条 means ‘ deep-fried dough sticks ’.

我吃油条。

I eat deep-fried dough sticks.

这儿没有油条。

Deep-fried dough sticks are not available here.

3. 和 hé

和 means ‘ and ’ here.

我去北京和西安。

I am going to Beijing and Xi ’an.

他的太太和女儿在商场。

His wife and daughter are in the shopping center

4. 豆浆 d ōu j i ng

豆 (d ōu) means ‘ bean ’. 浆 (j i ng) means ‘ thick liquid ’. 豆浆 means ‘ soy bean milk ’. Since 豆浆 is liquid , it would be better to say ‘ to drink soy bean milk ’ rather than ‘ to eat soy bean milk ’. ‘ Drink ’ in Chinese is 喝 (h).

我们吃油条 , 他们喝豆浆。

We eat deep-fried dough sticks and they drink soy bean milk.

5. 块 kuài

Here the measure word 块 stands the basic unit of PRC currency , as used in spoken Chinese.

十块钱

10 yuan (of Chinese money)

我有三块钱。

I have 3 yuan. .

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



yóu tiáo

油条

deep-fried dough stick

d u jī ng

豆浆

soy bean milk

第十八课 吃饭 Ch Fàn(饺子)

Topic 18 Eating a Meal(Dumplings)



情境 SITUATION:

中午 ,马丁一家去饭馆吃午饭 ,向服务员点菜。

It 's lunchtime and the Martins are in a restaurant ordering food.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Y u j i o z i m a ? Yào s nshígè .

大卫 : 有 饺子 吗 ? 要 三十 个。

(word for word) have dumplings ? want 30

Fúwùyuán : Y u . Nín yào zh r u xiànrde , háishi yáng r u xiànrde ?

服务员 : 有 。您 要 猪肉 馅儿的 , 还是 羊肉 馅儿的 ?

(word for word) yes. do you want pork stuffed , or mutton stuffed

Dàwèi : Yáng r u xiànrde .

大卫 : 羊肉 馅儿的。

(word for word) mutton stuffed

Fúwùyuán : H o . W jiànyì nín zài jiào j gè liángcài .

服务员 : 好 。我 建议 您 再 叫 几个 凉菜 。

(word for word) yes. I suggest you more order some cold dishes

Dàwèi : J i n h o de lái sì yàng .

大卫 : 捡 好 的 来 四 样 。

(word for word) choose best give us four

Bèi l : Bà , zài lái sān gè zhā pí .

贝拉 : 爸 , 再来 三个 扎啤 。

(word for word) dad , more order three mugs of draft beer

英文 ENGLISH

David : Do you have dumplings ? We want 30.

Waitress : Yes. Do you want pork stuffed or mutton stuffed ?

David : Mutton stuffed.

Waitress : Yes. I suggest you order some cold dishes , too.

David : Good idea. Give us four of your best.

Bella : Dad , order three mugs of draft beer.

注释

1. 饺子 jiǎo zǐ

饺 is a morpheme , meaning ‘ Chinese dumpling ’. 子 is a noun suffix here. The combination of them forms a noun 饺子 meaning ‘ Chinese dumpling ’.

饺子很好吃。

Chinese dumplings are delicious.

她不喜欢吃饺子。

She does not like to eat Chinese dumplings.

2. 三 sān means ‘ 3 ’.

Now more numbers are given in Chinese.

一 yī —one ; 二 èr —two ; 三 sān —three ; 四 sì —four ; 五 wǔ —five ;

六 liù —six ; 七 qī —seven ; 八 bā —eight ; 九 jiǔ —nine ; 十 shí —ten.

百 bǎi —hundred ; 千 qiān —thousand ; 万 wàn —ten thousand ; 零 líng —zero.

3. 个 gè

个 is a very common measure word which can be used with many things and in many cases , it can replace other measure words.

一个扎啤 (一杯 [bēi —cup] 啤酒 [pījiǔ —beer])

一个菜 (一样菜)

一个行李 (一件行李)

一个出租车 (一辆出租车)

一个饭馆 (一家饭馆)

4. 猪 zhū

猪 means ‘ pig ’.

这个国家没有猪。

There are no pigs in this country.

他们不吃猪肉 , 吃羊肉。

They don't eat pork , they eat mutton.

5. 肉 ròu

肉 means ‘ meat ’.

这个菜里没有肉。

There is no meat in this dish.

你喜欢吃什么肉 ?

What meat do you like to eat ?

6. 馅儿 xiànr

馅儿 means ' filling , stuffing '.

我喜欢这种馅儿。

I like this kind of filling.

馅儿太多了。

There is too much filling.

7. 羊 yáng

羊 means ' sheep '.

我喜欢羊。

I like sheep.

她不喜欢吃羊肉馅儿饺子。

She does not like eating dumplings with mutton filling.

[Note] : You may be interested in animals. Here are more names of animals in Chinese for your reference :

牛 niú—ox , cow

马 m —horse

驴 l —donkey , ass

骡子 luózi—mule

骆驼 lu tuo—camel

老虎 l oh —tiger

狮子 sh zi—lion

豹 bà o—leopard , panther

狼 láng—wolf

鹿 lù—deer

猫 m o—cat

狗 a u—dog

鸡 j —chicken , hen , cock , rooster , chick

鸭 y —duck

鹅 é—goose

鸟 ni o—bird

鱼 yú—fish

8. 建议 jiànyì

建 means ' to set up '. 议 means ' to discuss , discussion '. The combination of them 建议 means ' to suggest , suggestion '.

我建议你明天参观那个地方。

I suggest you visit that place tomorrow.

他的建议很好。

His suggestion is very good.

9. 叫 jiào

叫 means 'to order' here.

我叫菜,你买扎啤。

I'll order dishes, you buy draft beer.

谁叫菜?

Who will order dishes?

10. 凉 liáng

凉 means 'cool, cold'.

饺子凉了。

The dumplings are cold.

今天很凉。

It is cold today.

11. 菜 cài

菜 means both 'vegetable' and 'dish'.

这个地方有很多种菜。

There are many kinds of vegetables in this place.

他吃肉,不吃菜。

He does not eat vegetables, but eats meat.

12. 捡 jiǎn

捡 means 'to select, to choose, to pick up'.

请你捡最大的。

Pick up the biggest one.

他捡了一百元。

He has picked up 100 yuan.

请你捡最好的拿。

Choose and take the best.

13. 来 lái

The verb 来 is used in an order, request, etc..

来三个扎啤!

Give us three mugs of draft beer.

来三十个饺子!

Give us thirty dumplings.

14. 样 yàng

You have learned the character 样 in 这样 (like this, in this way) and 怎么样 (how).

In modern Chinese, 样 can also be used alone as a measure word, meaning 'kind'.

我买三样菜。

I want to buy three kinds of vegetables.

这里的花(hu —flower)只有红的、白的、黄的三样。

There are just three kinds of flowers here , red , white and yellow.

15. 扎啤 zh pí

扎 is the transliteration of ‘ jar ’. 啤 refers to 啤酒 (pījiǔ —beer). The combination of them 扎啤 means ‘ beer served in jars or mugs , that is , draft beer ’.

扎啤很好喝(h —to drink).

Draft beer is good to drink.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



cài dān

菜单

menu

jiǎo zi

饺子

Chinese dumplings

zhā pí

扎啤

draft beer

liáng cài

凉菜

cold dishes

第十九课 吃饭 Ch Fàn(烤鸭)

Topic 19 Having a Meal(Roast Duck)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家在一家高档的饭店。

The Martins are in a nice restaurant.

对话 DIALOGUE

Fúwùyuán : Qǐng zuò , qǐng xiān yòng chá . Xiànzài diǎn cài ma ?

服务员 : 请坐 , 请先用茶。现在点菜吗 ?

(word for word) please sit down , Please first have tea. now will order

Dàwèi : Yǒu Běijīng Kǎoyā ma ?

大卫 : 有北京烤鸭吗 ?

(word for word) have Beijing roast duck

Fúwùyuán : Yǒu , yào duōshǎo ? Yìzhī hái shì bàn zhī ?

服务员 : 有 , 要多少 ? 一只还是半只 ?

(word for word) yes , order how much A whole one or a half

Dàwèi : Yìzhī ba ! Gěi wǒ shǎo yìdiǎnr de .

大卫 : 一只吧 ! 给我瘦一点儿的。

(word for word) a whole one. give I a lean one

Fúwùyuán : Nín yào bú yào chángchang “ suāncài yú ” de wèidào ?

服务员 : 您要不要尝尝 “ 酸菜鱼 ” 的味道 ?

(word for word) you why not to taste fish with pickled cabbage taste

Dàwèi : “ Suāncài yú ” Sīchuan míngcài .

大卫 : “ 酸菜鱼 ” ? 四川名菜。

(word for word) fish with pickled cabbage ? Sichuan famous dish

Hǎo , lái yí ge . Zài lái píng bái pútáo jiǔ .

好 , 来一个。再来瓶白葡萄酒。

yes , we 'll have one. And give us a bottle white wine

Fúwùyuán : Chángchéng Gānbái shì Zhōngguó míngjiǔ , nín yīnggāi chángchang .

服务员 : 长城干白是中国名酒 , 您应该尝尝。

(word for word) great Wall Dry White is China famous , You should try it

Dàwèi : Hǎo , lái yí xiǎo píng ba !

大卫 : 好 , 来一小瓶吧 !

(word for word) OK , give us a small bottle

英文 ENGLISH:

Waitress : Please sit down and have some tea first. Will you order now ?

David : Do you have Beijing roast duck ?

Waitress : Yes , sir. How much would you like to order ? A whole one or a half ?

David : We want a whole one. Choose a lean one.

Waitress : Why not have a taste of fish with pickled cabbage ?

David : Fish with pickled cabbage ? That ' s a famous Sichuan dish. Yes , we 'll have one. And give us a bottle of white wine.

Waitress : Great Wall Dry White is famous in China. You should try it.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 茶 chá

茶 means ' tea '.

这个商店卖(mài—to sell)红茶、绿茶、花茶。

This shop sells black tea , green tea and scented tea.

2. 点 di n

点 has been given in 几点(what time ?) , 一点儿(little bit) , 点钟(o ' clock) , etc. .

Here 点 functions as a verb , meaning ' to order ' .

您点什么菜 ?

What dishes do you want to order ?

3. 烤鸭 k oy

鸭 means ' duck ' . 烤 means ' to toast , to warm , to roast ' . See the following :

我的手很冷 ,我要烤烤手。

My hands are cold and I want to warm them.

他最爱吃烤肉。

He likes eating roast meat.

4. 只 zh

只 , as an adverb , has been given before , meaning ' only ' .

我只有一块钱。

I have only one yuan.

李小姐只吃羊(yáng—sheep)肉,不吃猪(zh—pig)肉。

Miss Li eats mutton only, and doesn't eat pork at all.

When it is pronounced in the first tone, 只 can function as a measure word for birds and poultry.

一只鸭(y—duck)

两只鸡(j—chicken)

三只鹅(é—goose)

四只鸽子(g zi—pigeon, dove)

五只鸟儿(ni o—birds).

5. 半 bàn

半 means 'half'.

现在是十点半。

It's 10 30.

我买半个西瓜(x gu—watermelon).

I'll buy a half a watermelon.

6. 一点儿 yìdi nr

The structure of the phrase 瘦一点儿 is 'adjective + 一点儿 as post-modifier', meaning 'a little + (more) adjective'. For example:

我以前身体不太好,现在好一点儿了。

I was not in good condition before, but now I am feeling a little better.

今天比昨天热一点儿。

It is a little warmer today than yesterday.

这个问题容易一点儿,你能回答。

This question is a bit easier. You are able to answer it.

7. 要不要 yào bu yào

This is a question formed by juxtaposing the affirmative and negative forms of the auxiliary. Among the various question forms in Chinese, this form shows strong questioning tone. = For example:

你要不要吃西餐?

Do you want to eat western food?

这次我们能不能去西安?

Can we go to Xi'an this time?

This kind of question can also be formed by juxtaposing the affirmative and negative forms of the predicate verbs, adjectives, etc. For example:

王大明来不来?(Answer:他来 or 他不来)

他是不是美国人?(Answer:他是 or 他不是)

这里的气候好不好?(Answer:很好 or 不好)

这种苹果新鲜不新鲜?(Answer:很新鲜 or 不新鲜)

Notice the weakened 很 in the affirmative adjectives, i. e. 很 is necessary, but it does

not carry the meaning of 'very', unless it is given stress in reading or speaking.

8. 酸菜鱼 su ncàiyú

酸, as a noun, means 'acid'. 酸, as an adjective, means 'sour, tart'.

我非常喜欢酸牛奶。

I like yoghurt very much.

酸水果 (su nshu au —tart fruit)很好吃。

Tart fruit is delicious.

菜, means 'vegetable, dish'. 酸菜 means 'Chinese sauerkraut, pickled Chinese cabbage'. 鱼 means 'fish'. The combination 酸菜鱼 is a famous dish cooked with pickled Chinese cabbage and fish.

9. 四川名菜 Sìchu n míngcài

any famous Sichuan dish.

Sichuan cuisine is one of the most famous four cuisines of China. The other three are 山东菜 Shandong cuisine, 江苏菜 Jiangsu cuisine and 广东菜 Guangdong cuisine.

10. 来一小瓶吧 ! Lái yì xi o píng ba !

Give us a small bottle of it.

Some measure words (especially those whose origins are nouns of containers) can be preceded by adjectives such as 小 大 etc. as attributive. For example :

两个人喝了一大瓶酒。

The two people drank a big bottle of wine.

我们只能喝这一小瓶酒。

We can only drink this small bottle of wine.

11. 瘦 sh u

瘦 means 'thin, tight'. See the following :

张先生又高又瘦。

Mr. Zhang is tall and thin.

那件衣服太瘦, 我不能穿 (chu n—wear)。

That coat is too tight for me to wear.

12. 肥 féi

肥 means 'fat'. See the following :

这件衣服不瘦, 可是太肥 (féi—fat, loose)。

This coat is not tight, but too loose.

我喜欢肥肉, 不喜欢瘦肉。

I like fat rather than lean meat.

13. 味道 wèidào

味 means 'smell, taste'. See the following :

这是什么味儿 ?

What smell/taste is this ?

这味儿很香。

This smell/taste is very fragrant.

道 means 'road, way, path'. See the following:

山里的小道很多。

There are many paths on the mountain.

长安大道很有名。

Chang'an Street is very famous.

But 道 means 'kind, sort' in 味道 that signifies 'taste'.

请你尝尝这种味道。

Please try this taste.

你知道用汉语怎么说这些味道?

Do you know the Chinese for these tastes?

Sweet—甜(tián)

Bitter—苦(k)

Hot (Spicy)—辣(là)

Salty—咸(xián)

Astringent—涩(sè)

Sour—酸(suān)

14. 尝 cháng

尝 means 'to taste'. See the following:

我尝过这苹果,不酸。

I have tasted the apple. It's not sour.

先尝,后买。

Taste it before buying it.

15. 白 bái

白 means 'white'. See the following:

他买了很多白纸(zhǐ—paper)。

He bought a lot of white paper.

美国有白人,也有黑(hēi—black)人。

There are white people and black people in the United States.

你知道用汉语怎么说这些颜色(yánsè—color)吗?

Do you know the Chinese for the following colors?

Red—红色(hóngsè)

Green—绿色(lǜsè)

Yellow—黄色(huángsè)

Pink—粉红色(fēnhóngsè)

Brown—褐色(hèsè)

Orange—桔黄(júhuángsè)

Grey—灰色(huīsè)

Purple/violet—紫色(zǜsè)

Blue—蓝色(lánsè)

Note : The name of a color is usually followed by the general word for color 色sè.

16. 葡萄 pútao

葡萄 means ‘grape’. See the following :

葡萄很好吃。

Grapes are good to eat.

中国新疆(Xinji ng—the Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region)的葡萄非常有名。

The grapes of Xinjiang are very famous.

17. 长城干白 Chángchéng G nbái

长城干白 “Great Wall Dry White” is the name of a grape wine produced in Beijing , Great Wall Dry White.

18. 名酒 míngjiǔ

名 has appeared in 名字 meaning ‘name’. 名 can function as an adjective , meaning ‘famous ’ such as 名人 (famous person) , 名牌 (famous brand) , 名家 (famous expert). 名酒 means ‘famous wine or liquor’.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



shí p

食谱

menu

B i jng k o y

北京烤鸭

Beijing roast duck

第二十课 结账 Jiézhàng

Topic 20 Settling Accounts



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家吃过饭后，大卫·马丁去结账。

Mr. Martin is ready to pay the bill after dinner at a restaurant.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Xiǎojie ,jié zhàng.

大卫 : 小姐 结账。

(word for word) Miss ,the bill

Fúwùyuán : Èr bǎi wǔ shí kuài.

服务员 : 二百五十 块。

(word for word) 250 yuan

Dàwèi : Yòng xìnyòngkǎ xíng ma ?

大卫 : 用 信用卡 行 吗 ?

(word for word) use credit card may

Fúwùyuán : Duìbuqǐ ,wǒ men bú yòng xìnyòngkǎ .

服务员 : 对不起 ,我们 不 用 信用卡。

(word for word) sorry ,we don't accept credit cards

Dàwèi : Hǎo ba ,wǒ yǒu xiànjīn .

大卫 : 好吧 ,我有 现金。

(word for word) OK ,I have cash

Fúwùyuán : Xièxiè . Nín zhè shì sān bǎi ,zhǎo nín wǔ shí .

服务员 : 谢谢。您 这是 三百 ,找 您 五十。

(word for word) thanks. you this is 300. change your 50

英文 ENGLISH

David : Miss ,the bill.

Waitress : It 's 250 yuan.

David : May I use my credit card ?

Waitress : Sorry ,but we don't accept credit cards.

David : OK ,I 'll pay you in cash.

Waitress : Thanks. This is 300. Here is your 50 yuan change.

注释 : ||| ▶

1. 结账 jié zhàng

结 means 'to settle, to end, to figure out'. 账 means 'account' here. The combination of them 结账 means 'to settle an account, to pay a bill'. In China, the customer pays his bill after the meal, but at a refreshments shop, a snack bar, etc. he pays for what he takes at the counter before eating.

先生您不要走,您还没结账。

Sir, don't go. You haven't paid your bill.

请你们先走吧,我来结账。

You go first, please. Let me pay the bill.

2. 二百五十块 èr bǎi wǔ shí kuài

250 yuan

Digits bigger than the tens are :

百 bǎi—hundred

千 qiān—thousand

万 wàn—ten thousand

The way of reading big numbers is shown in the following examples :

100 一百

111 一百一十一

199 一百九十九

200 二百

1000 一千

1222 一千二百二十二

2563 两千五百六十三

3456 三千四百五十六

9999 九千九百九十九

10000 一万

Pay attention to the use of 零 in big numbers :

101 一百零一

202 二百零二

1002 一千零二

1020 一千零二十

1022 一千零二十二

2034 两千零三十四

3. 信用卡 xìnyòng kǎ

信 means 'to believe, to trust'. 用 means 'to use'. 卡 means 'card' as given before. The combination of 信 and 用 (信用) means 'trustworthiness, credit'.

人要有信用。

People should be trustworthy.

那个人不好 ,没有信用。

That man is not good ,because he doesn 't keep his word.

信用卡 means ‘ credit card ’.

我不用信用卡 ,用现金。

I don 't use credit cards. I pay in cash.

4. 行 xíng

行 means ‘ OK ,alright ’when it is used to ask or answer a question of possibility.

你一个人去中国 ,行吗 ?

Is it alright for you to go to China alone ?

我不会汉语。我一个人去中国 ,不行。

No ,I cannot go to China alone ,because I don 't know Chinese.

5. 对不起 duìbuqǐ

对不起 a verb phrase ,means ‘ sorry ’.

真对不起 ,这里没有票了。

Really sorry ,no tickets are left.

很对不起 ,今天我不去。

Very sorry ,I won 't go today.

6. 找 (钱)zhǎo (qián)

We learned 找 meaning ‘ to look for ,to find ’and 钱 meaning ‘ money ’. In this lesson ,找 means ‘ to give back change to someone ’.

我要找您三块钱。

I should give you three yuan change.

您不要找钱了。

Please keep the change.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters

shōu yín tái

收银台

cashier

zhàng dān

账单

bill

第二十一课 打电话约会

D Diànhuà Yu huì

Topic 21 Making an Appointment over the Phone



情境 SITUATION:

安妮和贝拉想明天去购物 ,大卫不想去。他想去郊区看看 ,在旅馆房间内给刘山打电话。

Anne and Bella are going shopping tomorrow , but David doesn 't want to go with them. He is calling to his friend ,Liu Shan.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Liú Shān ,n míngtiān yǒu kòng nǐ ma ?

大卫 : 刘山 ,你明天有空儿吗 ?

(word for word) Liu Shan ,you tomorrow free

Liú Shān : Míngtiān shì xīngqī liù ,yǒu kòng nǐ .

刘山 : 明天是星期六 ,有空儿。

(word for word) tomorrow is Saturday. I'm free

Dàwèi : Wǒ xiǎng qù jī qū zhuǎn zhuǎn .

大卫 : 我想去郊区转转。

(word for word) I thinking going to suburbs outing

Nǐ néng péi wǒ qù ma ?

你能陪我去吗 ?

you could accompany me come

Liú Shān : Kě yǐ . Qù Chāng píng zěn me yàng ?

刘山 : 可以。去昌平怎么样 ?

(word for word) can. going to Changping what

Dàwèi : Hǎo . Zán men qí zì xíng chē qù ,yǒu wèn tí ma ?

大卫 : 好。咱们骑自行车去 ,有问题吗 ?

(word for word) good. we by bike go. have problems

Liú Shān : Méi wèn tí . Chāng píng lí zhèr liù shí duō mí lǐ ,bù yuǎn .

刘山 : 没问题。昌平离这儿六十多里 ,不远。

(word for word) no problem. Changping from here sixty li. Not far

Dàwèi : Hǎo wa ,zhèng hǎo duàn liàn duàn liàn .

大卫 : 好哇 ,正好锻炼锻炼。

(word for word) OK. just good exercise

Zán men shén me shí hòu chū fā ?

咱们什么时候出发 ?

we when start

Liú Shān : Míngtiān zǎo shàng bā diǎn nǐ zài lǚ guǎn mén kǒu er děng wǒ .

刘山 : 明天早上八点你在旅馆门口儿等我。

(word for word) tomorrow morning eight you at the hotel door wait for me

英文 ENGLISH:

David : Liu Shan , are you free tomorrow ?

Liu Shan : Tomorrow is Saturday. Yes , I 'm free.

David : I am thinking of going to the suburbs for an outing.
Could you come with me ?

Liu Shan : I 'd like to. What about going to Changping ?

David : That 's fine. We can go there by bike. Is that a problem
for you ?

Liu Shan : No problem. It 's about sixty li from here. Not far.

David : OK. It 's good exercise. When shall we start ?

Liu Shan : At eight tomorrow morning. You just wait for me at the
door of your hotel.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 空儿 k ngr

空儿 , a noun , means ' free time ' , it is pronounced in the 4th tone.

晚上你有空儿吗 ?

Are you free in the evening ?

我请你吃饭 , 你有空儿吗 ?

I want to invite you to dinner , are you free ?

The answer is 有 or 没有 for the negative.

A. 你有空儿吗 ? Do you have free time ?

有。Yes. (have).

B. 她有空儿吗 ? Is she free ?

没有。No.

2. 郊区 ji oq

郊 means ' suburbs , outskirts ' . 区 means ' area , district ' .

这是山区。

This is a mountain area.

我不清楚北京有多少个区。

I am not clear about how many districts Beijing has.

The combination 郊区 means ' suburbs ' . See the following :

我们后天参观北京郊区。

We will visit the suburbs of Beijing the day after tomorrow.

3. 转 zhuàn

转 means 'to go around, to revolve'. See the following:

让我们到外边转一下, 休息休息。

Let's go out for a rest.

你在这里转什么?

What are you hanging around here for?

自行车转不了啦。

The bike doesn't work.

4. 陪 péi

陪 means 'to accompany'. See the following:

我陪妈妈去商店。

I accompany my mother to the shop.

他自己可以去看电影, 不需要别人陪。

He can go to the film by himself and doesn't want anyone to accompany him.

刘先生陪病人去医院。

Mr. Liu will accompany the patient to the hospital.

5. 昌平 Chāngpíng

昌平 is a district in northern Beijing.

6.怎么样? ...zěnmeyàng?

怎么样 is an expression to ask for opinion, for example:

明天六点出发怎么样?

How about setting off at six tomorrow?

咱们坐汽车去怎么样?

How about going there by bus?

7. 咱们 zánmen

咱们 is the 'inclusive we', i. e. 'we' includes the other party of the conversation (you and I). Compare the following:

咱们一起去吧。

Let's go together.

你们自己去吧, 这次我们不去了。下次咱们一起去。

You go by yourselves. We won't go this time. Let's go there together next time.

到我们家去, 咱们可以好好谈谈这个问题。

Come to my home and we can talk this question over.

8. 骑 qí

骑 means 'to ride'.

他每天骑自行车回家。

She goes home by bike every day.

我没骑过马。

I have never ridden a horse before.

9. 自行车 zìxíngchē

You have learned 自(oneself), 行(to go, to walk) and 车(vehicle). The combination 自行车 means 'bicycle'.

我坐汽车去那里, 不骑自行车。

I go there by bus, not by bike.

他买了两辆自行车。

He bought two bicycles.

我的自行车很新。

My bicycle is new.

10. 问题 wèntí

You know 问 means 'to ask' and 题 means 'topic'. The combination 问题 means 'question, problem'. See the following:

这个问题我不懂。

I don't understand this question.

世界上的问题太多了。

There are too many problems in the world.

那些问题不难。

Those questions are not difficult.

11. 多 duō

Used after a numeral or numeral-measure word phrase, 多 means 'more than... , over... '.

三块多钱

more than 3 yuan

一个多小时

over one hour

Note the different position of 多 will lead to different meanings:

十多个小时 (more than 10, less than 20 hours)

十个多小时 (more than 10, less than 11)

12. 离 lí

离 means 'to leave, part from, be away from'.

他离开美国两年了。

He has been away from America for two years.

火车站离我家很近(jìn—near)。

The railway station is near my house.

他离不了酒。

He can't stay away from wine.

13. 里 l

里, as a noun, means 'inside' and it is often used with '边' or '面'.

我的护照在箱子里(边)。

My passport is in the box.

里 can function as a traditional measure word for distance in China, which is 500 meters long.

北京离长城多少里?

How many li is Beijing from the Great Wall?

14. 远 yu n

远 means 'far'.

美国离这里很远。

The United States is far from here.

If you want to say 'near' in Chinese 近(jìn—near) is the right word. See the following:

我家离学校很近。

My house is very close to the school.

15. 好哇 h o w

好哇 means 'O. K.', which is used in spoken Chinese.

A. 请你去拿行李。

Will you go and collect our baggage.

B. 好哇。

O. K.

16. 正好 zhèng h o

You know 正 means 'just' and 好 'good'. The combination 正好 originally means 'exact (number, size, time)'. For example:

您的钱正好。

The money you have is the exact amount needed.

这几个苹果正好三斤。

These apples weigh exactly 3 jin.

我穿这件衣服正好。

This jacket fits me just right.

As an adverb, 正好 means 'just right, exactly, at an opportune moment'. For example:

今天天气不冷不热, 正好出去玩玩儿。

It's neither too hot nor too cold, just the right weather for an outing.

他打电话的时候我正好在家。

I just happened to be at home when he called me.

17. 锻炼 duànliàn

锻 means 'to forge'. 炼 means 'to temper, to refine'. The combination 锻炼 means 'to exercise, to have physical training'. See the following:

她每天锻炼一个小时。

She exercises for an hour every day.

我们要天天锻炼身体。

We should do physical exercise every day.

18. 出发 chū fā

出 means 'to go out'. 发 means 'to send out'. The combination of them 出发 means 'to set off'.

我们七点出发去飞机场。

We are to leave for the airport at 7 o'clock.

他们几点出发?

When are they going to set out?

19. 早上 zǎoshang

早 and 上 have appeared many times so far. The combination 早上 means 'morning'.

我早上 6 点起床, 中午 12 点吃午饭, 晚上 10 点睡觉 (shuìjiào—to go to sleep).

I get up at six in the morning, have lunch at twelve and go to sleep at ten in the evening.

20. 门口 ménkǒu

门 means 'gate, door'. See the following:

我们的房间有两个门。

Our room has two doors.

口 means 'mouth, opening'. See the following:

吃饭要张(zhāng—to open)口。

You have to open your mouth when you eat.

The combination 门 口 means 'gate, door':

明天早上 8 点她在门口等你。

She will wait for you at the door at 8 a. m.

他把客人送到门口。

He saw the guest off at the gate.

21. 点 diǎn

点, a noun of time, means 'o'clock'.

三点

three o'clock

一点

one o'clock

八点

eight o'clock

22. 等 dēng

等, a verb, means 'wait'.

我们等你。

We will wait for you.

她(tā —she)等司机。

She will wait for the driver.

林先生等飞机。

Mr. Lin is waiting for the plane.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



ā Miā y na diàn huà

公用电话

public phone

第二十二课 购物 G u wù(1)

Topic 22 Shopping(1)



情境 SITUATION:

贝拉在书摊上买旅游图。

Bella is buying a tourist map at a bookstall.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Y u detú m ?

贝拉：有地图吗？

(word for word) have map

T nzh : Y u. Nín m i shénme dìtú ?

摊主：有。您买什么地图？

(word for word) have. you buy what map

Bèil : Zhèr de l yóu tú .

贝拉：这儿的旅游图。

(word for word) here travel map

T nzh : Zhè shì zuì xīn de . Yí kuài bā .

摊主：这是最新的。一块八。

(word for word) this is newest ,one dollar eighty

英文 ENGLISH:

Bella : Do you have maps ?

vendor : Yes ,I have. What map do you want to buy ?

Bella : A tourist map of this city.

vendor : This is the latest. One yuan and eighty cents.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 购物 g wù

购 means 'to buy'. 物 means 'goods'. The combination of them 购物 means 'shopping'.

2. 地图 dìtú

地 means 'land' here. 图 means 'pictures, drawing' here. The combination of them 地图 means 'map'.

这是中国地图。

This is map of China.

我没有美国地图。

I do not have a map of America.

3. 摊主 t nzh

摊 means 'vendor's stand, booth, stall' here.

主 means 'owner' here. The combination of them 摊主 means 'stall owner, peddler'.

摊主在什么地方？

Where is the vendor?

我不是摊主？

I am not the vendor.

4. 买 m i

买 means 'to buy'.

我买英国地图。

I buy a map of England.

5. 什么 shénme

The interrogative pronoun 什么 may be used as attributive. See the following example:

这是什么地图？

What kind of map is this?

那是什么车？

What kind of car is that?

你吃什么饭？

What kind of food do you eat?

6. 这儿 zhèr

这儿 means 'here, this place'.

你的行李在这儿。

Your baggage is here.

这儿有个新商场。

There is a new shopping center here.

7. 旅游 l yóu

旅游 means ‘ to travel ’.

他们去北京旅游。

They are going to take a trip to Beijing.

8. 最 zuì

最 ,an adverb ,indicates ‘ the highest degree ’. It is normally used before an adjective.

最好

the best

最大

the biggest

最新

the newest

最贵(guì—expensive)

the most expensive

9. 新 x n

新 means ‘ new ’.

这辆出租车新。

This taxi is new.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



b i hu aMia s

百货公司

department store

sh nach na

商场

shopping centre

第二十三课 购物 G u wù(2)

Topic 23 Shopping(2)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁先生在水果店买水果。

Mr. Martin is shopping in a fruit shop.

对话 DIALOGUE

Diànzhu : Xī nǚshēng ,nín mǎi shénme ?

店主 : 先生 ,您买什么 ?

(word for word) sir ,you buying what

Dàwèi : Píngguǒ duōshǎo qián yì jīn ?

大卫 : 苹果 多少 钱 一斤 ?

(word for word) apples how much one jin

Diànzhu : Zhè zhǒng liǎng kuài yì jīn ,nà zhǒng liǎng kuài wǔ yì jīn .

店主 : 这种 两块 一斤 ,那种 两块 五 一斤。

(word for word) this kind two yuan per jin ,that is two yuan and a half per jin

Dàwèi : Nǎ zhǒng hǎo ?

大卫 : 哪种 好 ?

(word for word) which better

Diànzhu : Dāngrán guìde hǎo ,yòu dà yòu xīnxiān .

店主 : 当然 贵的好 ,又大又 新鲜。

(word for word) Of course ,expensive better ,big and fresh

Dàwèi : Qǐng bǎ nà zhǒng gěi wǒ kànkan . Hǎo ,yào guìde .

大卫 : 请把那种 给我 看看 。好 ,要贵的。

(word for word) please ,that one show me ,OK ,take expensive

英文 ENGLISH

Shopkeeper : What are you buying ,sir ?(Can I help you ?)

David : How much is one jin of apples ?

Shopkeeper : This kind is two yuan per jin and that is two yuan and a half.

David : Which is better ?

Shopkeeper : Of course ,the expensive kind is better ,they 're big and fresh.

David : Please ,show me that one. OK ,I 'll take the expensive ones.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 您买什么? Nín mǎi shénme?

您买什么?, literally meaning 'What do you buy?', is used by the shop assistant to greet the customer. It is not in the least rude. Similar expressions are:

您要什么?

您吃(点儿)什么?

(Used by a waiter at a restaurant. When '点儿' is used, it is more polite.)

您来点儿什么?

2. 苹果 píngguǒ

苹果 means 'apple'.

这种苹果很贵。

This kind of apples is expensive.

那种苹果不贵,但是不好吃。

That kind of apples is not expensive, but not delicious.

3. 多少钱 duōshǎo qián

How much?

This is a question to ask for a price. The pattern is:

...多少钱 + unit (measure word)

这种地图多少钱一张?

火车票多少钱一张?

扎啤多少钱一个?

This is another kind of sentence that doesn't use a verb.

4. 斤 jīn

斤 is a Chinese unit of weight, equal to 500 grams or half kilo.

我买三斤猪肉。

I want to buy 3 jin of pork.

五斤菜十块钱。

Five jin cost 10 yuan.

5. 哪 nǎ

哪 means 'where' with 儿 or 里.

他在哪里 (or 哪儿)?

Where is he?

哪 means 'which' with 个 (or other measure words).

你见哪个人?

Which person do you like to see?

6. 当然 d nārán

当 has many meanings such as 'to be , to act as , at the moment ... '. 然 has many meanings such as ' manner , correct , but , ... ', which is not used alone in modern Chinese. The combination of them 当然 means ' certainly , doubt less , of course '.

这种东西又好看又便宜 ,我当然要买。

This thing is beautiful and cheap , so of course I will buy it without any hesitation.

今天她生日 ,我们当然要去看她。

It is her birthday today , and we are certainly going to see her.

7. 贵 guì

贵 means ' expensive '. Its antonym is 便宜 (piányi—cheap , inexpensive).

凉菜便宜 热菜贵。

Cold dishes are cheap and hot dishes are expensive.

北京的东西比上海的贵。

Commodities are more expensive in Beijing than in Shanghai.

贵 + 的 , Adjective + 的 'is often used to modify a noun. See the following :

好 + 的 / 东西

good things

红 + 的 / 苹果

red apple

便宜 + 的 / 菜

cheap vegetable

好看 + 的 / 人

good-looking person

If the context is clear , the modified word can be left out , and the meaning still remains the same.

我不买便宜的。

I don 't buy the cheap (ones).

8. 又……又……y u... y u...

又 means ' also ' as we learned before. In Chinese , the construction 又...又... 'is often used to connect two parallel elements and to stress that the two states or characteristics exist at the same time. See the following :

他又是司机又是调度员。

He is a driver as well as a dispatcher.

我又喜欢吃西餐又喜欢吃中餐。

I like eating western food as well as Chinese food.

那个电视又大又便宜。

That TV set is big and cheap.

9. 大 dà

大 means 'big', 'large' here.

那个城市大。

That city is big.

上海比北京大。

Shanghai is bigger than Beijing.

10. 新鲜 xīnxiān

新 means 'new'. 鲜 means 'fresh'. The combination of them 新鲜 means 'fresh'.

See the following :

我买新鲜的菜。

I buy fresh vegetables.

猪肉和羊肉又新鲜又便宜(piányi—cheap).

Pork and mutton are not only fresh, but also cheap.

11. 把 bǎ

把 means 'to handle, to hold, handle'. Here it is used to introduce how a person or thing is dealt with or affected. '把 + object phrase' always precedes the verb of the predicate. See the following :

请把苹果拿来。

Please bring the apple here.

请把电视开开。

Turn on the TV, please.

李先生把钱给我了。

Mr. Li has given me the money.

请把那种给我看看。

Please show me one of that kind.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



shì chǎng

市场

Market / Bazaar

第二十四课 购物 G u wù(3)

Topic 24 Shopping(3)



情境 SITUATION:

贝拉在路边小店买衣服。

Bella is buying some clothes at a small shop in the street.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Zhè jiàn máoy duMh o qián ?

贝拉：这件毛衣多少钱？

(word for word) this sweater how much

Diànzh : Èrb is n.

店主：二百三。

(word for word) two hundred thirty

Bèil : Èrb i ,màima ?

贝拉：二百，卖吗？

(word for word) two hundred , to sell

Diànzh : Zhè shì y ng shàngd ng yángmáo zh de . Èrb i Bú mài.

店主：这是用上等羊毛织的。二百不卖。

(word for word) this is with best wool knitted. two hundred ?no sell.

Bèil : Èrb i yì ,z nmeyàng ?

贝拉：二百一，怎么样？

(word for word) Two hundred and ten , OK

Diànzh : H o ,náz u ba .

店主：好，拿走吧。

(word for word) OK. Take it.

Bèil : G i n qián. Q ngwèn máoy shàng de “ fú ” zì ,

贝拉：给你钱。请问毛衣上的“福”字，

(word for word) give you money. excuse me sweater Fu character ,

wèishénme dào xi ?

为什么倒写？

why upside down compose

Diànzh : Bì oshì“ xìngfú dào le ”.

店主：表示“幸福到了”。

(word for word) indicate ‘ happiness has come ’

Bella : How much is this sweater ?

Shopkeeper : Two hundred thirty yuan.

Bella : What about two hundred ?

Shopkeeper : It 's knitted with best wool. Two hundred ?No.

Bella : Two hundred and ten , OK ?

Shopkeeper : OK. Take it.

Bella : Here is the money. May I ask you why the character Fu
(happiness) is written upside down ?

Shopkeeper : It means ' happiness has come '.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 毛衣 máoyī

毛 means ' hair , wool ' here. See the following :

这马的毛非常白。

The horse 's hair is very white.

这种羊毛可以织毛衣。

This kind of fleece can be used to knit woolen clothes.

You know that 衣 means ' clothes '. See the following :

这件大衣很贵。

This overcoat is very expensive.

The combination 毛衣 means ' sweater '.

这件毛衣对我很合适。

This sweater suits me well.

2. 二百 , 卖吗 ? Èr bǎi , mài ma ?

What about two hundred ?

The literal meaning of this sentence is ' Will you sell it for two hundred yuan ? ' The customer often starts bargaining like this. In China , you can bargain at stalls , small shops , etc. but not in supermarkets , department stores , etc. .

3. 卖 mài

卖 means ' to sell '. See the following :

邮局不卖火车票。

The post office does not sell train tickets.

这个商店只卖酒 , 不卖冷饮。

This shop only sells wine. It does not sell cold drinks.

4. 上等 shàngdēng

上 means 'upper' and 等 (class). The combination 上等 means 'first class top grade'. We can also say 中等 (middle class, secondary). 下等 (low grade).

我用上等的羊毛织上等毛衣。

I use first class wool to knit the best woolen clothes.

5. 羊毛 yángmáo

羊 means 'sheep'. 毛 means 'hair'. The combination 羊毛 means 'wool'.

6. 织 zhī

织 means 'to knit, to weave'.

谁会织毛衣?

Who can knit a sweater?

这件毛衣织得很漂亮。

This sweater is knitted beautifully.

7. 拿走吧。Ná zǐ u ba.

Take it.

拿走 is a phrasal verb, meaning 'to take away'. Here 走 indicates the result of the action 拿, meaning 'away', rather than its original meaning 'to walk'. Other collocations using 走 are:

女儿带走了妈妈的包儿。

The daughter has taken her mother's bag away.

林小姐把那件衣服买走了。

Miss Lin bought that coat.

8. 字 zì

字 has appeared in 名字 and 汉字, meaning 'character, word'.

中国人常常(chángcháng—often)把“福”字和“春”(chūn—spring)字倒写。

Chinese people sometimes write the characters 'happiness' and 'spring' upside down.

我不认识这个字, 请你问他吧。

I don't know this character, please ask him.

9. 为什么 wèishénme

为, as a preposition, means 'for'.

他为你买了很多中文书。

He has bought many Chinese books for you.

什么 means 'what'.

这个城市的名字叫什么?

What is the name of the city?

The combination 为什么 means 'for what, why'.

您为什么学汉语?

Why do you study Chinese?

10. 倒 dào

倒 means 'upside down ,to move backwards ,to pour 'when it is pronounced in the 4th tone. See the following :

孩子把画挂倒了。

The child hung the picture upside down.

请你往后倒车。

Please back your car up.

给客人倒茶。

Pour a cup of tea for the guest.

不要把水倒在这里。

Don 't pour water here.

11. 幸福 xìngfú

幸 means ' lucky '. 福 means ' happiness '. The combination 幸福 means ' happy , happiness '. See the following :

祝你幸福 !

Wish you happiness !

他们生活非常幸福。

They are leading a very happy life.

为了人民的幸福 ,每个人都应该努力工作。

For the happiness of the people ,everybody should work hard.

12. 表示“幸福到了”。Bi oshì“ xìngfú dào le ”.

In Chinese ,倒 and 到 share the same pronunciation. So when people see the character 倒 written upside down ,the same pronunciation reminds people to think of the character 到 and its meaning ' arrive/come '. In this way ,the character written upside down becomes a symbol and expression of good luck. Chinese characters such as 福 and 春 are often written upside down for this purpose in China. As you know ,表示 means ' to indicate ',幸福 ' happiness ',到 ' to arrive ,to come '. The sentence '幸福到了 'means ' happiness has come 'showing good luck.

13. 请问 qǐng wèn

请问 is a polite expression when making an inquiry ,meaning ' excuse me ' ,or ' may I ask '.

请问 ,行李认领处在哪儿 ?

Excuse me ,where is the baggage claim area ?

请问 ,哪儿有西餐 ?

Excuse me ,where is there western food ?

请问 ,我的行李在哪儿 ?

Excuse me ,where is my baggage ?

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



sh nàchéna

商 城

plaza

a u wù zhōn

购 物 中 心

shopping center

第二十五课 问路 Wèn Lù(1)

Topic 25 Asking Directions(1)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家在中央电视台大楼附近的街上 ,向一位老人问路。

The Martins are asking an elder for directions on a street near the CCTV building.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Láojià ,nín zhī d o Zhōnghuá Shìjì Tán zài nǎr m ?

贝拉： 劳驾 ,您 知道 中华 世纪坛 在哪儿吗？

(word for word) excuse me ,you know Chinese Millennium Monument is where

Lǎorén : Jiù zài fùjìn ,lí zhèr bù yuǎn .

老人： 就在附近 ,离这儿不 远 。

(word for word) just nearby ,from here not far

Bèil : Zěnme zǒu ?

贝拉： 怎么 走？

(word for word) how go

Lǎorén : Yìzhí wǎng qián zǒu ,nǐ jiù huì kàn dào Zhōngguó Yìng Diànshìtái dà lóu ,

老人： 一直 往 前 走 ,你就会 看到 中央 电视台 大楼 ,

(word for word) straight ahead go ,you will see CCTV building.

dà lóu pángbiān jiù shì Zhōnghuá Shìjì Tán .

大楼 旁边 就是 中华 世纪坛 。

building side is Chinese Millennium Monument

Bèil : Xièxiè nín !

贝拉： 谢谢 您！

(word for word) thank you

Lǎorén : Bú kèqì . Jìzhù ,zài Zhōngguó Yìng Diànshìtái pángbiān nǎr .

老人： 不客气。记住 ,在 中央 电视台 旁边儿 。

(word for word) sure. remember ,at CCTV building side

Bella : Excuse me , do you know where the Chinese Millennium Monument is ?

Old man : It 's just nearby , not far from here.

Bella : How can we get there ?

Old man : Go straight ahead and you will see the CCTV building.
The Monument is next to it.

Bella : Thank you !

Old man : Sure. Remember , it 's next to the CCTV building.

注释 : |||▶▶

1. 问路 wèn lù

问 wèn means ' to ask '. 路 lù means ' road '. The combination of them 问路 means ' to ask the way '.

2. 知道 zhī dào

知 means ' to know , to be aware of '. 道 means ' road , way , path , reason , etc '. The combination of them 知道 means ' to know '.

谁知道怎么去电视台 ?

Who knows how to get to the TV station ?

我不知道她是谁 ?

I don 't know who she is.

3. 中华世纪坛 Zhōnghuá Shìjì Tán

The name of a monument to Chinese civilization , built in the western suburb of Beijing , to commemorate the advent of the new millennium.

中华世纪坛在北京。

The Chinese Millennium Monument is in Beijing.

我们去看中华世纪坛。

We are going to visit the Chinese Millennium Monument.

4. 附近 fùjìn

附 means ' to attach '. 近 means ' near ', which is an antonym to ' 远 ' (far). The combination of them 附近 means ' nearby '.

附近有一个银行。

There is a bank nearby.

邮局在附近吗 ?

Is the post office nearby ?

5. 远 yu n

远 means ' far 'here .

这里离长城不远。

The Great Wall is not far from here.

请你不要走远了。

Don 't go far , please.

北京离西安多远 ?

How far is it from Beijing to Xi 'an ?

6. 怎么 z nme

怎么 means ' how 'here.

你是怎么来的 ?

How did you come ?

怎么 meaning ' why 'is given here for reference. See the example :

他怎么不去旅游 ?

Why didn 't he go on a trip ?

7. 一直 yízhí

一 means ' all the time there is no change '. 直 means ' straight , straightforward '.

This is a useful adjective as well as an adverb. .

这路非常 (f íchána—very)直。

This street is very straight.

请你直走 ,不要拐。

Please go straight , don 't turn (to another direction).

请你直说吧。

Please speak bluntly.

那个人很直。

That person is very straightforward.

一直 means ' straight , all the time ' , just functioning as an adverbial.

一直往东走。

Go straight to the east.

从1990年到现在 ,他们一直在北京。

From 1990 up to now , they have been in Beijing all the time.

8. 往前走 w nà qián z u

We have come across several expressions for finding the way and giving directions. To find the way , we can ask :

请问 ,(a place)在哪儿 ?

Excuse me , but where is (a place) ?

请问 ,(a place)在附近吗 ?

Excuse me , is (a place) nearby ?

请问,附近有(a place)吗?

Excuse me, is there a (a place) nearby?

请问,去(a place)怎么走?

Excuse me, now can I get to (a place)?

Expressions for giving directions are:

往前走。

Go straight ahead.

一直往前走。

Go straight ahead.

从这儿往前走。

Go straight ahead from here.

往左/右拐。

Turn left / right.

从前边儿路口往左/右拐。Turn left / right at the intersection ahead (of us).

9. 会 huì

会 has many meanings. As you know 会在 约会 means 'to meet'. 会 means 'meeting' if functioning as a noun. If it functions as a main verb, it means 'to know, to be able to'. See the following:

我会英文,但是不会中文。

I know English, but I don't know Chinese.

'会' is used as an optative verb followed by a verb, it means 'to be able to, can'.

谁会开车?

Who can drive (a car)?

他们会说德语(Déy —German language)。

They can speak German.

10. 看到 kàndào

As you know, 看 means 'to see, to look at' and 到 means 'to arrive'. In fact, the two verbs do not share equality grammatically. 看 is the main action and 到 is the complement of 看, showing the result of the action 'see'. Here 看到 means 'have seen'.

More examples are given bellow:

我拿到了护照。

I have got the passport.

他走到了那里。

He walked there on foot.

11. 中央 zhōng yāng

Both 中 and 央 means 'center, middle'. 中央, the disyllabic noun they form, also mean 'centre, central, middle'.

城市中央有一个火车站。

There is a railway station in the city center.

中央银行在城市中央。

The Central Bank is in the center of the city.

12. 电视 diànshì

电(diàn) means 'electricity'. 视(shì) means 'vision, to look at'. The combination of them 电视 means 'TV'.

看电视

to watch T. V.

你的电视好吗?

Is your TV good?

13. 台 tái

台 means 'platform, station'.

电视台离这里不远。

The TV station is not far from here.

台 can also function as a measure word.

这台电视不好。

This TV set is not good.

14. 楼 lóu

楼 means 'building, floor'.

红楼很漂亮。

The red building is beautiful.

他家在四楼。

His home is on the fourth floor

15. 旁边 pángbiān

旁 means 'other'. 旁人 means 'other people'. 旁 means 'side' here. 边 means 'side' which often functions as a suffix. See the following:

前边(qiánbiān—in front)

后边(hòubiān—behind, on the back of)

左边(zuǒbiān—left)

右边(yòubiān—right)

东边(dōngbiān—east)

西边(xībiān—west)

南边(nánbiān—south)

北边(běibiān—north)

上边(shàngbiān—up, above)

下边(xiàbiān—down, below, under)

16. 就是 jiù shì

就, an adverb, is used with 是 to confirm or emphasize a fact.

这就是北京。

This is Beijing.

他就是王文。

He is Wang Wen.

您就是马丁先生吗？

Are you Mr. Martin ?

17. 不客气 Búkèqi

This is used here as a reply when one is thanked. The word 客气 may be used in several situations.

不必客气了。

Don't mention it ;You're welcome.

别客气 is another useful expression.

请多吃点儿 别客气。(The host says so to the guest[s] at dinner.)

要是需要我帮忙 就告诉我 别客气。(One says so when he is ready to help.)

您太客气了！(One says so when he is invited to dinner ,etc. or given a present.)

明天晚上我请您吃饭。

您太客气了！

18. 记住 jìzhù

记 means ' to remember , to write down '.

我说 你记。

You write it down while I am speaking.

住 means ' to live , to stay '. Here it functions as the complement of 记. The combination 记住 means ' to remember and have remembered '.

您说的 我记住了。

I have remembered what you said.

您们记住那个地方。

Remember that place.

If you want to say ' cannot remember ' , you just add ' 不 bù —not ' before the complement 住。

我记不住他的名字。

I cannot remember his name.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



zhì ān gǎng tíng

治安岗亭

police box

dì tiě zhàn

地铁站

subway station

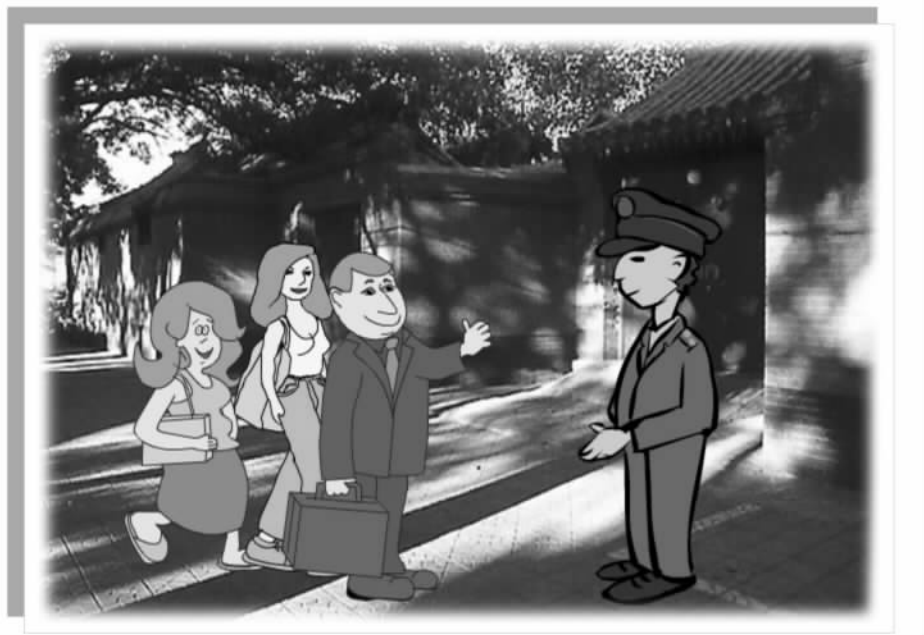
dì xià tōng dào

地下通道

underpass

第二十六课 问路 Wèn Lù(2)

Topic 26 Asking Directions(2)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家在北京一条胡同里 迷了路。这时走过来一位巡警。
The Martins have lost their way in a hutong when they see a policeman.

对话 DIALOGUE

Xúnjǐng : Qǐngwèn ,nǐmen yào qù nǎr ?

巡警 : 请问 ,你们 要去哪儿 ?

(word for word) excuse me ,you want to go where

Dàwèi : Wǒmen mílùle ,wǒmen xiǎng qù Róngbǎozhāi .

大卫 : 我们 迷路了 ,我们 想去 荣宝 斋。

(word for word) we get lost ,we consider go Rongbaozhai

Xúnjǐng : Róngbǎozhāi lí zhèr hěn yuǎn . Nǐmen zuìhǎo zuò chūzū qù .

巡警 : 荣宝 斋 离这儿 很 远 。你们 最好 坐 出租车 去。

(word for word) Rongbaozhai from here far. You better take taxi to go

Dàwèi : Nǎr yǒu chūzū ?

大卫 : 哪儿 有 出租车 ?

(word for word) where have taxi

Xúnjǐng : Nǐmen wǎng qián zǒu ,chūle hùtóng xiàng zuǒ gōu ,

巡警 : 你们 往 前 走 ,出了 胡同 向 左 拐 ,

(word for word) you go straight ahead after out hutong left turn ,

nàlǐ yǒu ge chūzū zhàn .

那里 有 个 出租车 站 。

over there have a taxi stand

Bèilā : Jǐngchá tóngzhì ,xièxiè nín le !

贝拉 : 警察 同志 ,谢谢 您了 !

(word for word) comrade policeman ,thank you.

Xúnjǐng : Bú kèqì . Huānyíng nǐmen lái Běijīng yóulǎn .

巡警 : 不客气。欢迎 你们 来 北京 游览 。

(word for word) not polite. welcome you to Beijing visit

Dàwèi : Xièxiè ,zàijiàn !

大卫 : 谢谢 ,再见 !

(word for word) thanks. good-bye.

英文 ENGLISH:

Policeman : Excuse me , but where do you want to go ?

David : We want to go to the Rongbaozhai Gallery , but we lost our way.

Policeman : It 's far from here. You 'd better take a taxi to go there.

David : Where can we find one ?

Policeman : Go straight ahead and turn to your left at the end of this hutong and you will find a taxi stand.

Bella : Thank you , Comrade Policeman.

Policeman : That 's all right. You are welcome to visit Beijing.

David : Thanks. Good-bye.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 迷路 mǐlù

迷 means ' be confused ' and also means ' fan '. See the following.

他迷路了 , 不知道怎么回家。

He lost his way and didn 't know how to get home.

他是球迷。

He is a soccer fan.

路 means ' way , road '. The combination 迷路 means ' get lost '.

天黑了 , 我看不清楚 , 迷了路。

I got lost because it was too dark to see clearly.

2. 荣宝斋 Róngbǎo zhāi

荣宝斋 (Róngbǎo zhāi) is the name of a famous gallery of calligraphy and traditional Chinese paintings in Beijing.

3. 最好 zuìhǎo

最 means ' most ' when used alone. 好 means ' good '. If we regard them as two single words 最好 means ' the best '. But here 最好 is one word meaning ' had better '. For example :

下次你最好秋天去西安。

You 'd better go to Xi 'an in autumn next time.

下雨了 , 咱们今天最好别出去了。

It 's raining. We had better stay at home today

4. 出了 ch le

出 has been discussed , meaning ‘ to come out ’. 了 here functions as an aspectual suffix showing an action has been completed.

我吃了午饭。

I have had my lunch.

明天吃了早饭 ,我就去看电影(diànyǐng—film).

After breakfast tomorrow , I 'll go to see the film.

The combination 出了 in the text ‘ 出了胡同向左拐 ’ , means ‘ turn to your left after going out of the lane ’.

5. 胡同 hú tóng

胡同(hú tóng) is a word borrowed from Mongolian , meaning ‘ lane ’. It 's used mainly in Beijing. See the example :

北京的胡同越来越少了。

The number of hutong in Beijing is being reduced from time to time.

北京的老胡同很有名。

The old hutong in Beijing are famous.

6. 向左拐 xiàng zuǒ guāi

左(zuǒ) means ‘ left , opposite of right ’ , is given here for reference.

右(yòu) means ‘ right , opposite of left ’. 拐 a verb , means ‘ turn to ’.

请您往右拐。

Turn to the right , please.

请在商店前边儿往右拐。

Please turn to the right in front of the shop.

7. 警察 jīngchá

警 means ‘ be alert ’ and 察 means ‘ to inspect ’. The combination 警察 means ‘ police (man) ’.

来中国以前 ,我没见过中国警察。

I hadn 't seen a Chinese policeman before coming to China.

这里的警察非常负责。

The policemen here are very responsible.

8. 同志 tóngzhì

同志(comrade) was once a common form of address in China , but it has fallen out of popular usage and one rarely hears it any more. Foreigners seldom use it and it is seldom used for foreigners. In the dialogue , Bella uses it for the policeman amusingly. 同志 is used in the following ways :

同志——同志 ,请问 ,去荣宝斋怎么走 ?

Excuse me , comrade , how to get to Rongbaozhai ?

surname + 同志——李同志去哪儿了 ?

Where has Comrade Li gone ?

given name + 同志——大龙同志病了。

Comrade Dalong is ill.

full name + 同志——李林山同志认识路。

Comrade Li Linshan knows the way.

post/occupation + 同志——服务员同志很热情。

The attendant is very warm.

9. 巡警 xúnjǐng

巡 means 'to patrol'. The word 巡警 means 'patrolling policeman'.

他是这个地方的巡警。

He is a patrolling policeman for this area.

我哥哥是巡警。

My elder brother is a patrolling policeman.

10. 游览 yóulǎn

游 means 'to travel' here. 览 means 'to view, to look at'. The combination of them

游览 means 'to travel and see'.

我们游览过北京、西安、桂林。

We have already seen Beijing, Xi'an and Guilin.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



au jǐ tiān qiáo

过街天桥

overhead crossing

róng bǎo zhāi

荣宝斋

Rongbaozhai

第二十七课 在长城上

Zài Chángchéng Shàng(1)

Topic 27 Visiting the Great Wall(1)



情境 SITUATION:

秋天,马丁一家和中国朋友白林在慕田峪长城上。

It is an autumn day. The Martins and their Chinese friend, Mr. Bai Lin, are walking on the Great Wall at the Mutianyu section.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : A ,zh n h o kàn !

大卫 : 啊 ,真 好 看 !

(word for word) ah ,really good look

BáiLín : Yuè w ng shàng z u yuè h o kàn .

白林 : 越 往 上 走 越 好 看。

(word for word) more to up walk more good look

Bèil : Zhèl gèng h o . Tàim ile !

贝拉 : 这里 更 好 。太 美 了 !

(word for word) here more good so beautiful

nní : Xi ox n di nr !

安妮 : 小 心 点 儿 !

(word for word) little mind a bit

英文 ENGLISH

David : Ah , really beautiful !

Bai Lin : The higher you go , the more beautiful it is.

Bella : It is much better here. How beautiful !

Anne : Be (a bit) careful !

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 在.....上 zài... shàng

The structure 在... 上 is often used to show a location .

在飞机上 on a plane

在楼上 up stairs

在路上 on the road

在长城上 on the Great Wall

在地上 on the ground

2. 长城 Chángchéng

长 means ' long '. 城 means ' city wall '. The combination of them 长城 means ' the Great Wall '.

长城真长。

The Great Wall is really long.

您几号去长城？

On which day will you go to the Great Wall ?

您怎么去长城？

How do you go to the Great Wall ?

3. 啊

啊 , an interjection , is often used to express exclamation or surprise.

4. 越.....越.....yuè... yuè...

‘越...越...’ is a proportional construction. Each 越 is followed by a word , a phrase or a clause. The extent of the second 越 phrase grows in proportion to that of the first.

越往上走越好看

the higher you go the more beautiful it is

越多越好

the more the better

越看越漂亮

the more you look , the more beautiful it seems

5. 好看 h okàn

好 means ' good , nice '. 看 means ' to look at , to see '. The combination of them 好看 means ' good-looking , beautiful '.

这个地方真好看。

This place is really beautiful.

你的女儿真好看。

Your daughter is really beautiful.

不能为负面。 See the following :

这张生日卡真不好看。

This birthday card is ugly.

6. 更 gèng

更 an adverb , means 'still more , even more ' .

她很好看。你更好看。

She is very pretty , you are prettier.

这个地方很美。那个地方更美。

This place is beautiful , that place is more beautiful.

7. 美 m i

美 means ' beautiful ' .

那张生日卡真美。

That birthday card is really beautiful.

8. 小心 xi o x n

小 means ' small , little ' . 心 means ' heart , mind ' . The combination of them 小心 means ' be careful ' .

你要小心。

You should be careful.

小心出租车。

Be careful of the taxi.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



zhù yì n quán

注意安全

keep safety in mind

tíng chē chǎng

停车场

car park

cè suǒ

厕所

toilet/lavatory

nán

男

male

nǚ

女

female

第二十八课 在长城上

Zài Chánachéna Shàna(2)

Topic 28 Visiting the Great Wall(2)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家和白林到长城脚下一展室,见那里挂着长城四季不同景色的大照片。一张冬景,长城被皑皑白雪所覆盖。

The Martins and Bai Lin are at the exhibition hall at the Great Wall looking at photographs of the Wall in four seasons. The Great Wall is covered by snow in a picture.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Mā ,n kàn ,zhè shì dōngtiān de Chángchéng !

贝拉 : 妈 ,你看 ,这是 冬天 的 长城 !

(word for word) mom ,you look ,this is winter Great Wall in

ānní : ,chùchù shì bái xuě ,yíwàngwújī.

安妮 : 噢 ,处处 是 白雪 ,一望无际。

(word for word) oh ,everywhere is snow ,boundless

Dàwèi : Zhè n shì yí ge mí rén de shì jiè .

大卫 : 真 是 一个 迷人的 世界。

(word for word) really is a fascinating world

Bèil : Bàb ,xià cì wǒ men dōngtiān lái zhè lǐ !

贝拉 : 爸爸 ,下次 我们 冬天 来这里 !

(word for word) Dad. next time we winter come here

Bái Lín : Jì jié bù tóng ,jǐng sè yě bù tóng .

白林 : 季节不 同 ,景色也不 同。

(word for word) season change , scene too change

Dàwèi : Kàn xià biān nà zhāng zhào piàn .

大卫 : 看 下边 那 张 照片 。

(word for word) look below that picture

英文 ENGLISH

Bella : Look , Mom , this is the Great Wall in winter.

Anne : Oh , there is snow everywhere , boundless snow.

David : It 's really a fascinating world !

Bella : Let 's come in winter next time , Dad.

Bai Lin : The scene changes with the change of season.

David : Look at that picture below.

注释

1. 冬天 dōngtiān

冬 means 'winter'. 天 means 'day, date'. The combination of them 冬天 means 'winter'.

冬天, 常常下雪。

In winter it often snows.

冬天这里太冷了。

It is too cold here in winter.

天 also means 'sky'. See the following:

天上有飞机。

There is an airplane in the sky.

2. 噢

It is used here to express surprise.

噢, 是你!

Oh, it's you!

噢, 你吃西餐!

Oh, you are having western food!

3. 处处 chùchù

In modern Chinese, nouns can be formed by duplicating nominal morphemes, meaning 'every...'. Here 处 is a morpheme, meaning 'a place' and its duplication 处处 means 'everywhere'. The following are some other similar examples:

人 人人 (everyone) 人人都 (dōu—all) 说长城美。(人人 as subject)

天 天天 (every day) 我天天都 (dōu—all) 很忙 (mána—busy)。(天天 as an adverbial)

年 年年 (every year) 他年年都 (dōu—all) 去中国。(年年 as adverbial)

What should be noted is that in the sentences above 都 is used in coordination with this kind of noun to emphasize the inclusive meaning.

4.是..... shì....

处 means 'place' here. 处处是白雪 is a sentence of existence. The pattern is: Place noun + 是 + noun (the thing that exists in the place).

饭店前边是一个邮局。

There is a post office in front of the hotel.

银行西边是一个商店。

There is a shop to the west of the bank.

This kind of sentence emphasizes the fact that the thing existing is a definite one (as if there is nothing else).

5. 雪(白雪) xu (bái xu)

雪 means 'snow'.

现在下雪了。

It is snowing now.

那里的雪很大。

It is snowing heavily there.

More words about weather are given here for reference :

雨 y —rain.

下雨 xià y —to rain

风 f ā—wind

刮(āu —to blow)风—to blow , to gust .

雷 léi—thunder

打雷 d ā léi—to thunder

闪 sh ǎn—lightning

打闪 d ā sh ǎn—to lightning

6. 一望无际 yíwànawújì

一 means 'one'. 望 means 'to look into the distance'. 无 means 'no, without'. 际 means 'boundary'. The combination of them 一望无际 is an idiom in Chinese , meaning 'to stretch as far as the eye can see'.

这个地方真大,一望无际。

This place is so large that one cannot see the boundary of it.

7. 迷人 mírén

迷 means 'be confused , be lost'. 人 means 'person'. The combination of them 迷人 means 'fascinating , extremely attractive'.

这里的山水很迷人。

The landscape here is very attractive.

8. 世界 shìjiè

世 means 'lifetime , generation , the world'. 界 means 'boundary'. The combination of them 世界 means 'world'.

你知道世界上有多少人吗?

Do you know how many people there are in the world?

我买一张世界地图。

I want to buy a world map.

9. 下次 xiàcì

下 means 'next' here. 次 is a measure word meaning 'time'. 下次 means 'next time'.

下次再说。

Leave it for the next time.

这次我没拿钱。

I have not brought money with me this time.

上次你给我一千元。

You gave me 1000 yuan last time.

10. 季节 jìjié

季 means 'season'. 节 has many meanings, such as 'period, knot, festival'. The combination of them 季节 means 'season'.

北京一年有四个季节。

There are four seasons in Beijing.

这个地方只(zh—only)有两个季节。

There are only two seasons in this place.

If you want to know how to say the four seasons (spring, summer, autumn, and winter) in Chinese, see the following:

春天 chūntiān—Spring

夏天 xiàtiān—Summer

秋天 qiūtiān—Autumn/fall

冬天 dōngtiān—Winter

11. 同 tóng

同 means 'same', which is seldom used alone except its negative form (不同). In fact, it is often used with 相(xiāng—each other) in modern Chinese.

这里的景色和那里的景色相同。

The scenery here is the same as the scenery in that place.

这张画和那张画相同。

This painting is the same as that one.

我的房间和你的房间不同。

My room is different from yours.

12. 景色 jǐngsè

景 means 'view, scenery, scene'. 色 means 'color'. The combination of them 景色 means 'scenery'.

我喜欢这里的景色。

I like the scenery here.

这里的景色比那里的景色美。

The scenery here is more beautiful than there.

13. 张 zhāng

张 means 'piece', a measure word for flat things, such as a sheet of paper.

你有几张生日卡?

How many birthday cards do you have?

他要几张入境卡?

How many entry forms does he want?

14. 照片 zhàopiàn

照 means ‘to reflect, to illuminate, to take (a photo)’ here. 片 means ‘slice, thin piece’. The combination of them 照片 means ‘photo’.

我想照一张照片。

I want to take a photo.

你的照片真好看。

Your photo is really beautiful.

他想买两张长城的照片。

He wants to buy two photos of the Great Wall.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



yóu rén zhǐ bù

游人止步

no admittance

ài hù huā cǎo

爱护花草

cherish flowers and grass

第二十九课 在长城上

Zài Chángchéng Shàng(3)

Topic 29 Visiting the Great Wall(3)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家和白林在展室内,看挂在那里的长城照片。眼前是一张春天的长城画。

The Martins and Bai Lin are enjoying photographs in the Great Wall exhibition hall. They are admiring a picture of the Great Wall in spring.

对话 DIALOGUE

BáiLín : Kàn ,zhè shì chūn tiān de Chángchéng . Nǐ rènshi zhèxiē huā ma ?

白林 : 看 ,这是 春天 的 长城 。你 认识 这些 花儿 吗 ?
(word for word) look ,this is Great Wall spring. you know these flowers

Dàwèi : Dāngrán rènshi . Chūn tiān zhèlǐ táohuā ,

大卫 : 当然 认识 。春天 这里 桃花 、
(word for word) certainly know. spring this area peaches and
xínghuā biàndì kāi .
杏 花 遍地 开。
apricots flowers everywhere blossom

Bèilā : Chūn tiān de jǐngsè zhēn měi ā !

贝拉 : 春天 的 景色 真 美 啊 !
spring time scene beautiful

BáiLín : Gùlǎo de Chángchéng měi nián chūn tiān dōu chuān yǒu táohuā ,

白林 : 古老 的 长城 每 年 春天 都 穿上 有 桃花 、
(word for word) old Great wall every year springtime , wear peach and
xínghuā de xīn zhuāng .
杏花 的 新 装 。
apricot flower 's new dress

Ānní : Chángchéng quèshí gùlǎo . Dàgài shì Qíncháo jiàn de ba ?

安妮 : 长城 确实 古老 。大概 是 秦朝 建 的吧 ?
(word for word) Great Wall is really old. probably was Qin Dynasty built during

BáiLín : Duì ,jù jīn yǒu liǎng qiān duō nián de lìshǐ le !

白林 : 对 ,距今 有 两 千 多 年 的 历史 了 !
(word for word) yes. up to now have two thousand years history

Bèilā : Wǒ zhīdào ,tā dōng qǐ Shānhǎi Guān ,

贝拉 : 我 知道 ,它 东 起 山海 关 ,
(word for word) I know , it from Shanhai Pass in the east and
xī dào Jiāyù Guān ,yǒu yī wàn duō huá lǐ cháng ,
西 到 嘉峪 关 ,有 一 万 多 华里 长 ,
ends at Jiayu Pass in the west , have ten thousand 0.5 km. long ,
duì ma ?
对 吗 ?
right

BáiLín : Yīdiǎnr dōu bú cuò ,duì jí le .

白林 : 一点 儿 都 不 错 ,对 极 了 。
(word for word) perfect ! right extremely

Bai Lin : Look , this is the Great Wall in spring. Do you know what flowers they are ?

David : Certainly. In spring , peaches and apricots are in blossom everywhere in this area.

Bella : What a beautiful spring time scene !

Bai Lin : Every year in springtime , the old Great Wall will wear a new dress with peach and apricot flowers.

Anne : The Great Wall is really old. Was it first built during the Qin Dynasty ?

Bai Lin : Yes. It has a history of over two thousand years.

Bella : I know the Great Wall starts from Shanhai Pass in the east and ends at Jiayu Pass in the west. Am I right ?

Bai Lin : Perfect ! You are right.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 春天 chūntiān

If you want to know how to say the four seasons (spring , summer , autumn , and winter) in Chinese , see the following :

春天 chūntiān—spring

夏天 xiàtiān—summer

秋天 qiūtiān—autumn/fall

冬天 dōngtiān—winter

2. 认识 rènshi

认 means ' to recognize '. See the following :

自己的护照 , 请自己认。

Please recognize your own passport.

北京变化太大了 , 我都不敢认了。

Beijing has changed so much that I can hardly recognize it.

汉字比较难认。

Chinese characters are rather hard to recognize (read).

识 means ' to know '. See the following :

他不认识一个字。

He does not know a single character.

The combination 认识 means 'to know, to recognize'. See the examples:

你在什么地方认识她的?

Where did you get to know her?

我不认识这种树。她认识。

I can't recognize this kind of tree, but she can.

3. 这些 zhèxi

You know 这 means 'this'. 些 is a measure word meaning 'some, a few'. The combination 这些 means 'these'. 那 (nà—that) can also be used before 些 and 那些 means 'those'. If 一 (yì—one) is used with '些', the combination 一些 means 'some, a few' too, making a general reference. e. g.:

一些人说英语, 一些人说汉语。

Some people speak English, some speak Chinese.

他有很多书(shu—book)。这些是英文的, 那些是中文的。

He has many books. These are in English, those in Chinese.

4. 花儿 hu r

花 as a noun, means 'flower'. 儿, the retroflex indicator is added to express smallness or affection.

我妈妈和爸爸最喜欢这种花儿。

My parents like this kind of flower most.

花 as a verb, means 'to spend'.

我弟弟(dìdì—younger brother)花20万(wàn—ten thousand)元买了这辆汽车。

My younger brother spent twenty thousand yuan on this car.

他妹妹(mèimei—younger sister)花5年时间学汉语。

His younger sister spent five years learning Chinese.

5. 桃 táo

桃 means 'peach'. See the following:

我非常喜欢吃桃(儿)。

I like to eat peaches very much.

桃树冬天不开花。

Peaches don't blossom in winter.

6. 杏 xìng

杏 means 'apricot'. See the examples:

杏是一种水果。我爱吃。

Apricot is a kind of fruit that I like to eat.

这种杏多少钱一斤?

How much is a jin of this kind of apricot?

7. 遍地 biàndì

遍 means 'all over, everywhere'. See the examples:

他走遍全中国。

He has traveled all over China.

我找遍了北京 ,也没有找到你想要的那种毛衣。

I have looked for it everywhere in Beijing ,but I couldn't find the sweater you want.

遍 also can function as a verbal measure word , meaning ' time '.

这本书我念了两遍。

I have read this book twice.

地 means ' earth , soil , land , place '. The combination 遍地 means ' everywhere '. See the following :

下雨了 ,遍地都是水。

It is raining , so there is water everywhere.

8. 开 k i

You know 开 means ' to drive '(开车) , ' to open '(开门—open the door) , ' to establish '(开饭馆—to run a restaurant) , etc. . It also means ' to bloom , to blossom '.

See the example :

那些树都开花了。

Those trees are all in full bloom.

9. 年 nián

年 means ' year '. See the following :

2000 年 3 月 15 号

March 15 , 2000

1998 年 5 月 26 号

26 May 1998

[Pay attention to the difference between the time sequences. In Chinese—it's always from the bigger to the smaller , but it varies in English.]

10. 都 dū

都 here functions as an adverb , meaning ' all '.

这里的人都会说中文。

All the people here speak Chinese.

从 1999 年到现在 ,他都在北京。

He has been in Beijing all the time from 1999 till now.

这 50 个商店里都没有我要的东西。

None of the 50 shops has the thing I want.

这些水果都好吃。

All these fruits are delicious.

11. 穿 chuān

穿 means ' to wear , to put on ' here.

他们冬天穿毛衣。

They wear woollen sweater in winter.

12. 装 zhuāng

装 means 'dress, clothes'. See the following:

他穿的是西装。

What he is wearing is a suit.

冬天不能穿夏装,要穿冬装。

One cannot wear summer clothes, but winter clothes.

装 can also function as a verb, meaning 'to pretend, to load'. See the following:

他装哭(k —to cry).

He pretended to cry.

这辆车可以装 20 人。

This car can hold 20 people.

13. 确实 quèshí

确 means 'true, indeed' which is not used alone in modern Chinese.

实 means 'solid, true'. See the examples:

这块地很实。

This piece of land is very solid.

这个人很老实。他想什么就说什么。

This man is very honest. He says whatever is on his mind about. (speaks his mind).

The combination 确实 means 'indeed, really'. See the following:

我确实不知道怎么回答这个问题。

I really don't know how to answer this question.

14. 古老 gǔlǎo

古 has appeared in 古迹(gǔjì—historical site), meaning 'ancient, age-old'. 老 means 'old'.

林先生很老,90 多岁了。

Mr. Lin is very old. He is over 90.

The combination 古老 means 'ancient'.

我们都不认识那些古老的文字。

15. 大概 dàgài

大 means 'big, large'. 概 means 'broad outline'. The combination 大概 means 'general idea, roughly, approximate, probably'.

我只知道一个大概。

I have only a general idea.

你们大概是美国人吧?

You are probably Americans.

16. 秦朝 Qíncháo

秦 means 'the Qin Dynasty (221—207 B. C.)'. 朝 means 'dynasty'.

17. 建 jiàn

建 means 'to build, to establish'. See the following:

这些大楼都是新建的。

These buildings have been built recently.

你们学校是几年前建的？

How many years ago was your school established?

18. 距今 jù jīn

距 means 'distance, be apart from'. See the example:

天津(Tiān jīn—a city near Beijing that is a municipality directly under the Central Government)距北京大概 120 公里。

Tianjin is about 120 km. from Beijing.

今 means 'now'. The combination 距今 means 'from now, up to now'.

秦朝距今两千多年。

The Qin Dynasty was over 2000 years ago.

19. 两千 liǎng qiān

two thousand

1000 一千

1200 一千二(百)(Note: The last unit can be omitted.)

1210 一千二百一(十)

1211 一千二百一十一(Notice the use 一十)

1220 一千二百二(十)

1222 一千二百二十二

2000 两千(Note: 2000 is more commonly read 两千 than 二千.)

2563 两千五百六十三

3456 三千四百五十六

9999 九千九百九十九

Pay attention to the use of 零 in big numbers:

1001 一千零一

1010 一千零一十

1020 一千零二十

1022 一千零二十二

2034 两千零三十四

20. 一万 yí wàn

ten thousand

Note that in Chinese, there is a unit 万(ten thousand), which does not occur in English.

The way to count thousand and ten thousand is shown in the following examples:

11000 一万一(千)

11200 一万一千二(百)

11220 一万一千二百二十(十)

11111 一万一千一百一十一 (Notice the use 一十.)

12222 一万二千二百二十二

20000 两万 (Note :20000 is more commonly read 两万 than 二万.)

22000 两万二(千)

Pay attention to the use of 零 in big numbers :

10001 一万零一

10010 一万零一十

20200 两万零二百

21. 历史 lìshǐ

历 means 'experience , history , calendar ' which is not used alone in modern Chinese.
这是今年的日历(rìlì—calendar).

This is a calendar of this year.

史 means ' history '. See the following :

这本书不是中国史。

This is not a book of Chinese history.

The combination 历史 means ' history '. See the following :

我没有学过中国历史。

I have not studied the history of China.

不要忘记(wàngǐ—forget) 历史。

Never forget history.

22. 它 tā

它 , a pronoun , means ' it ' referring to things other than human beings.

李先生买了马。它们都是从兰州来的。

Mr. Li has bought many horses and they all came from Lanzhou.

你给我的苹果很好吃 ,我又把它们给了我妈妈。

The apples you gave me are very delicious , and I gave them to my mother.

我听说你买了一张画 ,把它给我看看。

I heard you bought a painting , and please let me have a look.

23. 东起山海关 西到嘉峪关 dōng qǐ Shānhǎi Guān , xī dào Jiāyù Guān

起 means ' to start from '.

山海关—name of a pass at one end of the Great Wall.

嘉峪关—name of a pass at one end of the Great Wall.

24. 华里 huálǐ

华 here refers to ' China '. 里 as a noun , means ' a Chinese unit of distance , equal to 500 meters '. The combination 华里 means ' 0.5 KM. '.

这里离长城一百华里。

It 's 50 km. from here to the Great Wall.

25. 长 cháng

长 as an adjective , means ‘ (of space or time) long ’.

长城很长 ,黄河也很长。

The Great Wall is very long , and the Yellow River is also very long.

中国的历史(lìshǐ —history) 很长。

Chinese history is very long.

长 can also function as a noun , meaning ‘ length ’.

这条(tiáolù —a measure word)路(lù —road)长五千(qīn —thousand)里。

The length of this road is 2.5 kilometers.

26. 错 cu

错 means ‘ wrong , fault mistake ’. See the following :

你的回答错了。

Your answer is wrong.

你写错了很多汉字。

You wrote many Chinese characters the wrong way.

对不起 ,我拿错了你的东西。

Sorry , I took your thing by mistake.

这不是我的错儿 ,是他的错儿。

This is not my fault , but it 's his fault.

27. 极了 jílě

极 means ‘ pole , the utmost point , extreme ’.

地球(dìqiú —globe , the earth)有南极和北极。

The Earth has a South Pole and a North Pole.

那个地方极不安全。

That place is absolutely unsafe.

The combination 极了 means ‘ extremely ’ which is normally placed after an adjective showing the highest degree. See the following :

南极和北极冷极了。

It is extremely cold at the South and North Poles.

他汉语说得好极了。

He speaks Chinese extremely well.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters

shuǐ fèi cè suǒ

收费厕所

pay toilet

gōng cè

公厕

public toilet

第三十课 谈旅程 Tán L chéng

Topic 30 Talking About What to See in the Future



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家去西安前 ,在北京机场与王京话别。

The Martins are bidding farewell to Mr. Wang Jing at Beijing airport before they leave for Xi 'an.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Zhè jǐ tiān zài Běijīng yóulǎn le hěnduō dìfang.

大卫 : 这几天在北京游览了很多地方。
(word for word) the past few days in Beijing seen many places

Bèilā : Zhēn kāixīn !

贝拉 : 真开心 !
(word for word) having a very good time

Wángjīng : X'ān shì shìjiè wénmíng de gǔchéng yě yǒu hěnduō zhídé kàn de dìfang

王京 : 西安是世界闻名的古城也有很多值得看的地方。
(word for word) Xi'an is a world-famous ancient city. too have a lot to see there

Dàwèi : Duì , wǒ men yào cānguān bīnmǎ yǎng ,

大卫 : 对 , 我们要参观兵马俑、
(word for word) Yes , we are going to visit the Terra-cotta Warriors ,
Bànpō cūn hé Huáqīng Chí .
半坡村和华清池。
the Banpo Village and the Huaqing hot spring

Wángjīng : X'ān shì lǐ yǒu xǔduō míngshèng gǔjì ,

王京 : 西安市里有许多名胜古迹 ,
(word for word) Xi'an city have also many scenic spots and historic sites ,
xiàng Zhōnglóu 、 gǔchéngqiáng
像钟楼、古城墙、
such as Bell Tower , ancient city wall ,

Dà yàn tǎ 、 Xiǎo yàn tǎ , bǎohù de hěn hǎo , dōu zhídé kàn .

大雁塔、小雁塔 , 保护得很好 , 都值得看。
Da Yan Pagoda Xiao Yan Pagoda. all worth see

Dàwèi : Dāngrán , zhǐ shì shíjiān tài jǐn le . Wǒ men hái yào qù Guìlín ,

大卫 : 当然 , 只是时间太紧了。我们还要去桂林 ,
(word for word) yes , only time is short , we also ask to Guilin.

kǒngpà kàn bu liǎo nàme duō

恐怕看不了那么多。

afraid can't see so many

Bèilā : Wǒ men zhuānjǐn shíjiān , jǐnliàng kàn ,

贝拉 : 我们抓紧时间 , 尽量看 ,
(word for word) we should make the best use of our time , try to see ,
yuè duō yuè hǎo .

越多越好。

as many as we can

ānní : Rúguo shízài bù xíng , nà zhǐ hǎo xià cì zài shuō !

安妮 : 如果实在不行 , 那只好下次再说了 !
(word for word) if reality cannot , just next time too

英文 ENGLISH:

David : We have seen many places in Beijing during the past few days.

Bella : We have been having a good time.

Wang Jing : Xi 'an is a world-famous ancient city. You have a lot to see there.

David : Yes , we are going to visit the Terra-cotta Warriors , the Banpo Village and the Huaqing hot spring.

Wang Jing : In the city there are also many historic places worth seeing , such as the Bell Tower , the ancient city wall , the Da Yan Pagoda and the Xiao Yan Pagoda. They are all well-protected.

David : Yes , all are worth seeing , only time is short and we have to hurry to Guilin. I am afraid we can 't see so many places.

Bella : We should make the best use of our time and try to see as many as we can.

Anne : If we cannot see them all , we will just leave some until the next time we come.

注释 : ||| ▶

1. 这几天 zhè j ti n

这 means ' this '. It also means ' now , at the moment , at present , lately '. 几 means ' how many ' when it is used in an interrogative sentence. 几 means ' several , few ' when used in a statement.

他买了几本中文书。

He bought several Chinese books.

她病了 , 几天没吃饭了。

She is ill and has not eaten a meal for several days.

她这几天没来学校 , 去中国了。

She has gone to China , so she has been absent from school.

If you want to express ' those days ' , 那 is used to replace ' 这 ' .

那几天他忙着考试 (k oshì—to have an exam) 没来看我。

He was busy preparing for the exam those days and did not come to see me.

2. 游览 yóulǎn

游 has many meanings such as 'to swim, to tour'.

我不会游水。

I cannot swim.

他游过了这条河(hé—river)。

He swam across the river.

他们不是游客。

They are not tourists.

览 means 'to look at, to view'. The combination 游览 means 'to tour'.

这里的人都游览过长城。

All of the people here have visited the Great Wall.

您想游览哪些地方？

Which places do you want to visit?

3. 地方 dìfāng

地方 here means 'place'.

这地方是银行吗？

Is this place a bank?

4. 开心 kāixīn

You know 开 means 'to open, to turn on', such as 开门 (kāi mén—open the door) 开电视 (turn on the TV). You have learned 心 (xīn—heart). The combination 开心 means 'happy, have a good time'.

我们游览了长城, 玩得非常开心。

We had a very good time when we visited the Great Wall.

开心 has another meaning 'to tease, to make fun of'.

别拿我开心。

Don't make fun of me.

5. 世界 shìjiè

世 means 'world'. 界 means 'boundary, circle'. All of them are not used alone in modern Chinese. The combination 世界 means 'the world'.

谁知道世界人口是多少？

Who knows the population of the world?

世界上有很多名胜古迹(míngshèng gǔ jì)。

There are many scenic spots and historic sites in the world.

我想游览全世界。

I want to travel all over the world.

6. 闻名 wénmíng

闻 means 'to hear, to smell'.

耳(ěr—ear)闻不如眼(yǎn—eye)见。

Seeing for yourself is better than hearing from others.

请你不要直接用鼻子(bízi—nose)闻。

Don't smell it with your nose directly.

请你闻闻这花,真香(xi ng—fragrant, sweet-smelling)。

Please smell the flower. It's really fragrant.

名 means 'name, famous'.

她名叫李香。

Her name is Li Xiang.

王先生是一位名人。

Mr. Wang is a famous person.

The combination 闻名 means 'famous, well-known'.

中国长城世界闻名。

The Great Wall in China is world-famous.

7. 古 g

古 means 'ancient, old'.

这是一张古画。

This is an ancient painting.

那些建筑(jiànzhù—building)很古。

Those building are very old.

古时候,这个地方是一个城市。

This place was a city in ancient times.

8. 城 chéng

城 has appeared in 长城 城市(chéngshì—city) and 城墙(chéngqiáng—city wall), meaning 'city, big town'.

9. 值得 zhíde

值 means 'value, worth'.

这张古画值很多钱。

This old picture is worth a lot of money.

这瓶(píng—bottle)茅台值多少钱?

How much is this bottle of Maotai?

李林得了很多钱。

Li Lin has got a lot of money.

这次比赛,他得了第一。

He got first place in the contest.

The combination 值得 means 'be worth'.

那个地方值得参观。

That place is worth visiting.

10. 参观 c ānguān

参 means 'to take part in, to join, to see'. 观 means 'to view, to see'. The combination 参观 means 'to visit'. The object of 参观 is never a human being.

我们参观兵马俑。

We visit the Terracotta Warriors.

他在北京参观过什么地方？

What places did he visit in Beijing?

明天你们参观哪儿？

Where are you going to visit tomorrow?

11. 兵马俑 Bīngmǎyǒng

兵 means 'soldier' here. 马 means 'horse'. 俑 means 'wooden or earthen figure buried with the dead in ancient times'. The combination of them 兵马俑 means 'the unearthed clay figures of warriors and horses in Xi'an, known in English as the terracotta warriors.'

西安有兵马俑。

There are Terra-cotta Warriors in Xi'an.

12. 市 shì

市 appears in 城市, 北京市, 上海市, 广州市, meaning 'city, municipality'. 市 also means 'market, bazaar', like in 市场 (shìchǎng—market), 市价 (shìjià—market price), 市面 (shìmiàn—market condition).

13. 许多 xǔduō

许 means 'to promise, to allow'. See the following:

这里不许参观。

Visiting here is not allowed.

不到十二点, 不许回家。

No one is allowed to go home until 12 o'clock.

The combination 许多 means '很多'. See the following:

我有许多问题要问。

I have many questions to ask.

许多人会说汉语。

Many people can speak Chinese.

14. 名胜古迹 míngshèng gǔjì

名 means 'famous' here. 胜 means 'beautiful'. The combination '名胜' means 'a place famous for its scenery or historical significance'. 古 means 'ancient' and 迹 means 'trace or remains, ruins'. The nominal set phrase '名胜古迹' means 'scenic spots and historical sites'.

北京的名胜古迹很多。

There are many scenic spots and historical sites in Beijing.

学中文的人喜欢中国的名胜古迹。

Those who are learning Chinese like the scenic spots and historical sites of China.

15. 像 xiàng

像 means 'portrait, be like, seem, such as'. See the following:

这是谁的像?

Whose portrait is this?

林先生很像你。

Mr. Lin looks like you.

我去过很多国家,像日本、德国、美国、英国、韩国。

I have been to many countries, such as Japan, Germany, the United States, Britain and Korea.

16. 钟楼 Zhōnglóu

钟, as a noun, means 'bell, clock'.

这个钟是明代的。

This bell was made in the Ming Dynasty.

我家的钟停了。

The clock in my house has stopped.

钟 also can function as a measure word in hours and minutes.

我明天6点钟起床以后,就去找你。

I'll go to see you immediately after getting up at six tomorrow.

他十分钟以前就走了。

He went away ten minutes ago.

楼 has appeared many times so far, meaning 'storied building, tower'.

The combination 钟楼 means 'bell tower'.

17. 墙 qiáng

墙 means 'wall'.

长城就是很高、很长、很宽(kuān—wide)的墙。

The Great Wall, in fact, is just a tall, long and wide wall.

每间房子都有墙。

Every room has walls.

18. 保护 bǎohù

保 means 'to protect, to guarantee'. 护 means 'to protect'. The combination 保护 means 'to protect, to safeguard, protection'. See the following:

请你把这些动物(dòngwù—animal)保护好。

Please protect these animals well.

孩子(háizi—children)需要大人(dàrén—adult)的保护。

Children need the protection of adults.

很多旅游的地方没有被保护好。

Many tourist attractions have not been well protected.

19. 得 de

得('de' , a structural particle) is used to replace 不. See the following :

看得出

be able to recognize

拿得出

be able to take out

20. 当然 d ngrán

当 means ' to be '. See the following :

我想当经理。

I want to be a manager.

谁想当画家 (huàji —painter) ?

Who wants to be a painter ?

然 means ' like this , so ' here and it is not commonly used alone in modern Chinese.

The combination 当然 means ' certainly , of course , no doubt '.

如果你有困难(kùnnán—difficulty) ,我当然要帮助(b ngzhù—to help)。

Certainly , I will help you if you have any difficulty.

这是你的信 ,我当然要给你。

This is your letter , so I should certainly give it to you.

21. 只是……zh shì . . .

The combination 只是(就是) is used before an unfortunate event. For example :

那个地方很值得去 ,就是(只是)太远了。

It 's worth going there , only it is too far.

这幅画儿画得真好 ,就是(只是)太贵了。

That painting is really beautiful , only it is too expensive.

只 means ' only , merely '. See the following :

他有三个哥哥(g ge—elder brother) ,我只有一个。

He has three elder brothers and I have only one.

这只是时间问题。

This is only a question of time.

他只会中文 ,不会英文。

He doesn 't know English , he knows only Chinese.

22. 恐怕 k napà

Both 恐 and 怕 mean ' to fear , to be afraid of '. See the following :

她怕狗 (a u—dog).

She is afraid of dogs.

我怕吃那种饭。

I am afraid of eating that kind of food.

The combination of them 恐 and 怕 mean ' be afraid of , perhaps '.

恐怕他今天不能来。

I am afraid he could not come today.

你别出去 ,恐怕要下雨。

Don 't go out. I am afraid it 's going to rain.

23. 看不了那么多 kànbuli o nàme duM

看 is the main verb ,不了 is the complement of 看 showing impossibility and 那么多地方 , is the object of 看. See the following :

他吃不了这些水果(shu gu —fruit)。

He cannot eat these fruits.

东西太多 ,我拿不了。

There are too many things for me to carry.

If you want to show the possibility of an action , use 得 to replace 不. See the following :

他吃得了这些水果。

He can eat this fruit.

东西不太多 ,我拿得了。

These are not too many things for me to carry.

Many other adjectives or verbs can also function as a complement to show possibility or impossibility. See the following :

我听不懂他说什么。

I listened to him and cannot understand what he said.

我听得懂他说什么。

I listened to him and understood what he said.

中文不难 ,我学得好。

The Chinese language is not difficult and I can learn it well.

中文很难 ,我学不好。

The Chinese language is too difficult for me to learn it well.

24. 抓紧 zhu j n

抓 , a verb , means ' to grab , to seize , to take , to arrest '. See the following :

请用筷子(kuàizi—chopsticks) ,不要用手(sh u—hands)抓饭。

Please use chopsticks , don 't eat your meal with your hands.

要抓机会 ,多说汉语。

Please seize opportunities to speak more Chinese.

他是好人 ,不要抓他。

He is a nice man , don 't arrest him.

抓 is often used with a complement , such as 住紧 , etc. See the following :

他抓住了我的右(y u—right)手。

He caught hold of my right hand .

你要抓紧时间。

You should make full use of your time.

紧 has many meanings , such as ' tight , short of , close '. See the following :

他把钱紧紧拿在手里。

He is holding the money tight in his hand.

旅程安排得紧。

The itinerary is packed.

我的时间很紧。

My time is pressed.

他的钱很紧。

He is short of money.

25. 尽量 jìnliàng

尽 means 'to exhaust'. 量 means 'capacity'. The combination 尽量 means 'to try one's best, as... as possible'. See the following:

他们要尽量多参观。

They will try to visit as many places as possible.

我尽量少说英文,多说汉语。

I'll try my best to speak less English and more Chinese.

26. 越.....越.....yuè...yuè...

'越...越...' is a proportional construction. Each 越 is followed by a word, a phrase or a clause. The extent of the second 越 phrase grows in proportion to that of the first.

越往上走越好看

The higher you go the more beautiful it is.

越多越好

The more the better.

越看越漂亮

The more you look, the more beautiful it seems.

27. 实在 shízài

实 means 'solid, reality'. 在 means 'exist, be in/at/on'. The combination 实在 means 'true, real, honest, indeed'.

这个人非常实在。

This person is very honest.

请不要再问,我实在不知道。

Please don't ask me any more. I really have no idea.

如果实在累了,就休息吧。

Take a rest if you are really too tired.

28. 只好.....zhǐ hǎo...

只 means 'only' and 好 means 'good'. The combination 只好 means 'there is no choice, can only'. For example:

下雨了,今天不能去那里,只好明天了。

It's raining. We cannot go there today, so we can only go there tomorrow.

我们要看演出,没买到票,只好在房间里看电视了。

We want to see the performance , but we didn 't get tickets. So we can only stay in our room and watch the performance on TV.

他不会说汉语 ,只好说英语。

He cannot speak Chinese , so he could only speak English.

那里没有出租车 ,他们只好走着回家。

There was no taxi there , so they had to go home on foot.

29. 再说 zài shuō

to put off until some time later

再说 is preceded by a word or phrase indicating time.

先不谈这件事 ,咱们吃了饭再说。

Don 't talk about the matter until we have eaten our meal.

今天咱们不看电影 ,下星期再说。

We won 't see the film today. Let 's see it next week.

If the time given before 再说 is indefinite , then what is said is often considered a quibble. For example :

这件事以后再说吧。

Let 's take up this matter later.

这件事过几天再说吧。

Let 's talk about this matter a few days later.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



rì chéng biǎo

日程表

itinerary

yí hé yuán

颐和园

the Summer Palace

第三十一课 看兵马俑 Kàn Bīngmǎ yǎng

Topic 31 The Terra-Cotta Warriors



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家与众多游客在参观出土的秦兵马俑。

The Martins are visiting Xi'an to see the Terra-cotta Warriors from the Qin Dynasty.

对话 DIALOGUE

dàwèi : Bngm y ng zhème duM !

大卫 : 兵马俑 这么多啊 !

(word for word) Terra-cotta Warriors so many

nní : Shìya ,tngshuMháiméiy u f jué wán ne .

安妮 : 是呀 , 听说 还没有 发掘 完 呢。

(word for word) yes ,heard to have not yet excavation is still going on

Bèil : M ,n tng !

贝拉 : 妈 ,你听 !

(word for word) mom ,you listen

nní : Tngshénme ?

安妮 : 听 什么

(word for word) listen to what

Bèil : W h oxiàng tngdào le zhànm de jiàosh ng .

贝拉 : 我 好像 听到了 战马 的 叫声 。

(word for word) I seem to hear battle horses cry.

Dàwèi : Nà chúncuìshì de xi ngxiàng . Búgu ,

大卫 : 那 纯粹 是你的 想象 。不过 ,

(word for word) It 's only your imagination , anyway ,

t men zh n shìgègè x x rúsh ng .

它们 真 是个个 栩栩如生 。

them every one true to life

n ní : T men xiàng w men zh nshìzhe huósh ngsh ng de lìsh !

安妮 : 它们 向 我们 展示着 活生生 的历史 !

(word for word) they at we demonstrate living history

Bèil : Li ngqi n duMnián qián jiù néng

贝拉 : 两千 多 年 前 就 能

(word for word) over 2000 years ago could created

chuàngzào ch zhème w idà de yìshù qī ,

创造 出 这么 伟大的 艺术 奇迹 ,

that such a great artistic wonder ,

zh n ràng w wú f xi ngxiàng !

真 让 我 无法 想象 !

really beyond my imagination

David : There are so many Terra-cotta Warriors.

Anne : Yes , and I heard that the excavation is still going on.

Bella : Mom , listen !

Anne : Listen to what ?

Bella : I seem to hear the battle horses neighing.

David : It 's only your imagination , anyway , every one of them is true to life.

Anne : They demonstrate before us a living history.

Bella : It 's really beyond my imagination that such a great artistic wonder could be created over 2000 years ago !

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 兵马俑 B nām y nā

兵 means ' soldier ' here. 马 means ' horse '. 俑 means ' wooden or earthen figure buried with the dead in ancient times '. The combination of them 兵马俑 means ' the unearthed clay figures of warriors and horses in Xi 'an , known in English as the terra-cotta warriors. '

西安有兵马俑。

There are Terra-cotta Warriors in Xi 'an.

2. 呀 ya

呀 , an interjection , often used to express surprise. Here it is used to express agreement.

是呀 , 我应该学好汉语。

Right , I should learn Chinese well.

对呀 , 兵马俑太漂亮了 !

Right , the Terra-cotta Warriors are really beautiful.

3. 听说 tīngshuō

听 means ' to hear , to listen '.

我妈妈喜欢听歌儿 (g ē — song) , 不喜欢听音乐 (yīnyuè — music).

My mother enjoys listening to songs , not music.

你听到什么了 ?

What have you heard ?

说 , as a verb , has appeared in 说汉语 , meaning ' to speak '. The combination 听说 , as a verb , means ' to hear of , to be told '.

你听说李先生昨天去美国了吗 ?

Have you heard that Mr. Li left for America yesterday?

4. 还没有 hái méiyóu

还没有 means 'to have not yet'. 有 may be omitted in spoken Chinese. For example:
已经八点了,他们还没(有)吃晚饭呢。

It is 8 p. m. and they have not eaten their supper.

我来过两次中国,可是还没(有)游览过西安,这次一定要去。

I have been to China twice, but I have not visited Xi'an yet. I must go there this time.

5. 发掘 fājué

发 means 'to send, to express, to emit'. See the following:

他脸色发白。

His face has become pale.

我想发一封信。

I want to send a letter.

掘 means 'to dig'. See the example:

你为什么掘地?

Why are you digging the earth?

The combination 发掘 means 'to excavate, to unearth'. See the following:

兵马俑是什么时候发掘的?

When were the Terra-cotta Warriors unearthed?

他们从地下发掘出很多东西。

They excavated many things from underground.

6. 好像 hǎoxiàng

You know the meaning 好 and 像. The combination 好像 means 'as if, seem, be like'.

好像要下雪。

It seems it will snow.

他们好像是多年的老朋友。

They seem to have been close friends for many years.

我好像在什么地方见过那个人。

I seem to have met that person somewhere before.

7. 战马 zhàn mǎ

战 means 'to fight, war'. See the following.

他们为人民的幸福而战。

They are fighting for the happiness of the people.

第二次世界大战发生(fāshēng—to happen)在1939年。

World War II began in 1939.

这些战马是从哪儿来的?

Where are these battle horses from?

8. 叫 jiào

You know 叫 means 'to call, to let', such as '这叫什么?—What is it called/named?', '她叫我说—He asks me to speak'. 叫 also means 'to call, to cry...', See the following:

马叫

A horse is neighing.

谁在那里大叫?

Who is shouting over there?

9. 声 shēng

声 means 'sound, voice'.

我听不见,请你大声说。

I can't hear you. Please speak louder.

电话怎么没声了?

Why is the phone silent?

听,别出声。

Listen, don't make noise.

10. 不过 búguò

不过 is a conjunction introducing a turn in speech. It is similar to 但是, but is moderate in tone. For example:

我听说这种菜很有名,不过我没吃过。

I heard that this kind of vegetable is famous, but I have not tried it yet.

这次游览了不少地方,很累,不过很值得。

I have traveled many places and I feel very tired, but it's worthwhile.

11. 纯粹 chún cuì

纯 means 'pure, unmixed'.

这羊毛很纯。

This wool is pure.

这是纯金(jīn—gold)。

This is pure gold.

粹 means 'essence, pure' which is not used alone in modern Chinese. The combination 纯粹 means 'pure, sheerly, wholly'. See the following:

他买这么多东西,纯粹是为了你。

It's entirely for you that he has bought so many things.

他是一个纯粹的人。我要和他做朋友。

He is a pure person and I want to make friends with him.

12. 想象 xiǎngxiàng

You know the meaning 想(to think, to want, to miss) and that of 象(be like, photo). The combination of them 想象 means 'to imagine, imagination'.

我想像他有两米高,但是他只有一米五。

I imagined he would be 2 meters tall ,but he is only one meter and a half only.

他想想不到我的汉语这么好。

He didn 't imagine that my Chinese could be so good.

这不是想象 ,是真的。

This is not imagination ,it 's true.

13. 个个 gègè

个 is a measure word. The reduplication of monosyllabic measure words has the meaning of ' every ,all '. For example :

这里的人个个都会汉语。

Everyone here can speak Chinese.

他做的事情件件都非常好。

All the things he has done are very good.

这么多纸 ,他张张都要看一看。

There are so many sheets of paper. He wants to check them one by one.

14. 栩栩如生 x x rúshēng

栩 means ' vivid ' which is not used alone in modern Chinese. You know 如 means ' as , be like ' and 生 means ' alive '. The combination 栩栩如生 is an idiom , meaning ' true to life '.

他画的马栩栩如生。

The horses he paints are all true to life.

15. 向 xiàng

向 is a preposition here and means ' towards , from '.

请您向前走。

Please go straight ahead.

从这里向东看 ,你就能看见那座 (zu —a measure word for building) 红楼。它就是你要去的地方。

Looking eastward from here , you can see the red building where you are going to.

我要努力向林先生学习 (xuéxí—to study , to learn).

I must learn from Mr. Lin.

16. 展示 zhǎnshì

展 means ' to unfold , to show '. 示 means ' to show , to indicate '. The combination 展示 means ' to open up before one 's eyes '.

他画的画儿清楚地展示了那里的景色。

The pictures he painted clearly show the landscape there.

他要展示他的才能。 (cáinéng—ability , talent).

He wants to show his talent.

17. 着 zhe

The 'verb + 着' phrase can function to indicate an accompanying action, as in the following:

他们坐着看书呢。

They sit here reading.

他们吃着饭谈话。

They are talking while eating a meal.

18. 活生生 huóshēngshēng

活 means 'to live, alive'. See the examples:

冬天里这些花儿还活着。

These flowers are still alive in winter.

我买了一条活鱼。

I have bought a fish that is alive. (a live fish)

生 means 'to live, living'. The combination 活生生 means 'living, real'.

书里的人都活生生的,写得非常好。

The characters in the book are very vivid and very well portrayed.

19. 创造 chuàngzào

创 means ('to create') which is not commonly used by itself. 造 means 'to make, to build'. See the following:

他们造了很多新房。

They built many houses.

这座大楼是谁造的?

Who built this tall building?

这种电视是日本造的。

This kind of TV is made in Japan.

The combination 创造 means 'to create'. See the example:

历史是人民创造的。

History is created by the people.

他们创造了很多奇迹。

They have created many miracles.

20. 伟大 wěidà

伟 means 'big, great' which is not used alone in modern Chinese. 大 means 'big'.

The combination 伟大 means 'great'. See the following:

中国和美国都是伟大的国家。

Both China and the U. S. A. are great countries.

长城是世界上的一个伟大的建筑(jiànzhù—building).

The Great Wall one of the world's great pieces of architecture.

21. 艺术 yìshù

艺 means 'skill, art'.

他是中国的一个有名的艺人。

He is a famous entertainer.

我学艺多年。

I have studied the skill for many years.

术 means 'art, skill, technique'. The combination 艺术 means 'art'. See the following:

我在这个学校学习艺术。

I am studying art in this school.

她是一个伟大的艺术家。

She is a great artist.

22. 奇迹 qíjī

奇 means 'strange, rare'. See the following:

她真是个奇人。

She is really an extraordinary person.

他写了一本奇书。

He has written a remarkable book.

迹 means 'trace, mark'. See the example:

我们参观了很多历史古迹。

We visited many historic sites.

The combination 奇迹 means 'wonder, miracle'. See the following:

世界上的七大奇迹是什么?

What are the seven wonders of the world?

23. 让 ràng

让 means 'to let, to allow'. The pattern '让 + someone + do (+ something)' is very common in modern Chinese.

您让我想想。

Let me think it over.

她不让我喝酒。

She doesn't allow me to drink wine.

谁让你去参观兵马俑?

Who introduce you to visit the Terracotta Warriors?

24. 无法 wúfǎ

无 means 'no', 法 means 'way, method'. The combination 无法 means 'no way, unable'. See the examples:

我不懂汉语, 无法用汉语写信。

I don't know Chinese and I cannot write letters in Chinese.

这里没有邮局, 我无法寄信。

I cannot mail the letter since there is no post office here.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



jìn zhǐ pāi zhào

禁止拍照

no photographing

yóu rén zhǐ bù

游人止步

no admittance

bó wù guǎn

博物馆

museum

chén liè shì

陈列室

exhibition room

第三十二课 看演出 Kàn Yǎnchū (1)

Topic 32 Watching a Performance(1)



情境 SITUATION:

在西安大剧院前 ,大卫 · 马丁看到演出《仿唐乐舞》海报后 ,去售票处买票。

At the Xi'an Grand Theater ,Mr. Martin is booking tickets after reading the playbill of Tang Dynasty Music and Dances.

对话 DIALOGUE

M d ng : Q ngwèn ,háiy u jnti nde piào m ?

马丁 : 请问 ,还有今天的票吗?

(word for word) excuse me ,still have today ticket

Sh upiàoyuán : Duìbuq ,méile . Míngti nde k y ma ?

售票员 : 对不起 ,没了。明天的可以吗?

(word for word) sorry ,no tomorrow OK

M d ng : K y . W m is n zh ng . Y nch j di n k ish ?

马丁 : 可以。我买三张。演出几点开始?

(word for word) can I buy three piece. play how many o'clock begin

Sh upiàoyuán : Q di nbàn .

售票员 : 七点半。

(word for word) seven o'clock half

英文 ENGLISH

Mr. Martin : Excuse me ,are there any tickets available for today ?

Clerk : Sorry ,no tickets left. Would tickets for tomorrow be OK ?

Mr. Martin : Yes. I 'll buy three. When does the performance begin ?

Clerk : Seven thirty. (Half past seven).

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 演出 y nch

演 means ‘to perform, to show’. 出 means ‘out’. The combination 演出 means ‘to perform, performance’.

他们去演出。

They are going to perform.

他们的演出很好。

Their performance is very good.

我们明天演出。

We are going to perform tomorrow.

2. 票 piào

票 means ‘ticket’.

一张票三百元。

Three hundred yuan for one ticket.

他们买飞机票。

They buy air tickets.

3. 售票员 sh upiàoyuán

售 means ‘to sell’. 员 is a suffix meaning ‘a staff member’. 售票员 means ‘a person who sells tickets’.

4. 对不起 duìbùqǐ

对不起 a verb phrase, means ‘sorry’

真对不起, 这里没有票了。

Really sorry, No tickets are left.

很对不起, 今天我不去。

Very sorry, I won't go today.

5. 没 méi

没, an adverb, means ‘not’ exclusively to negate 有. It may be used as the short form for 没有.

我没钱。

I have no money.

她没票。

She has no ticket.

If 没 is placed before an action verb, it indicates the action did not happen or has not yet happened.

我没吃中餐。

I did not eat Chinese food.

演出没开始。

The performance has not started yet.

6. 开始 kǐ shǐ

开 means ‘ to start , to open ’. 始 means ‘ to begin ’. The combination 开始 means ‘ to start ’.

演出七点开始。

The performance begins at 7 o'clock .

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



jù chǎng

剧场

theater

tài píng mén

太平门

Emergency Exit

qǐng wù xī yān

请勿吸烟

No Smoking

第三十三课 看演出 Kàn Yǎnchū (2)

Topic 33 Watching a Performance(2)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家在西安大剧院看完演出后。

The Martins are talking about the performance they just saw.

对话 DIALOGUE

nní : J nti n de y nch f icháng chénggMg !

安妮 : 今天的演出 非常 成功 !

(word for word) today performance very successful

Bèil : W tèbié ài tng Tángdàide y nyuè ,zh n mírén .

贝拉 : 我特别爱听 唐代 的音乐 ,真 迷人。

(word for word) I especially liked hear Tang Dynasty music ,really fascinating.

búgu ,t men chàng de g r w tng bú tài d ng .

不过 ,他们 唱 的歌儿我听不太 懂。

But ,they sang songs I hear not fully understand

Dàwèi : W zuìx hu n w d o《F ití n》.

大卫 : 我最 喜欢 舞蹈《飞天》。

(word for word) I best liked dance Flying Apsaras

nní : Shì ,w y x hu n ,w d o hé y nyuè f icháng héxié .

安妮 : 是 ,我也 喜欢 ,舞蹈 和 音乐 非常 和谐。

(word for word) yes ,I too liked ,dance and music very harmony

Bèil : W tèbié x hu n《F n Tán Píp 》.

贝拉 : 我特别 喜欢《反 弹 琵琶》。

(word for word) I liked the dance Playing Pipa on the Back

Y nyuánde y nì shì y liú de .

演员 的演技是一流的。

performer performance was first rate

Dàwèi : Zhège w d o nándù h ndà ,y udi nr xiàng zájì !

大卫 : 这个 舞蹈 难度 很大 ,有点儿 像 杂技 !

(word for word) this one dance difficult to perform ,somewhat like acrobatics

Bèil : Bà ,w méikàngu ZhMgguó zájì . Zánmen kàn yì ch ng ba !

贝拉 : 爸 ,我 没 看过 中国 杂技。咱们 看 一 场 吧 !

(word for word) dad ,I never seen chinese acrobatic show. We must see one

Dàwèi : H o ba !W y xi ng kàn .

大卫 : 好吧 !我也 想 看。

(word for word) alright. I also thinking see

英文 ENGLISH:

Anne : The performance today was very successful.

Bella : I especially liked the Tang Dynasty music. It was really fascinating. But , I could not fully understand the songs they sang.

David : I liked the dance Flying Apsaras best.

Anne : So did I. The dance and music were in perfect harmony.

Bella : I liked the dance Playing Pipa on the Back . The performance of the dancers was first rate.

David : It is difficult to perform , somewhat like acrobatics.

Bella : Speaking of acrobatics , Dad , I have never seen an acrobatic show. We must see one.

David : Alright. I 've also been thinking of seeing an acrobatic show.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 我最喜欢舞蹈《飞天》。W zùi x huan w d o 《F iti n》.

I like the dance Flying Apsaras best.

Verbs of emotion such as 喜欢 , 想 , 爱 , etc. can be modified by degree adverbs , for example :

我很喜欢这个舞蹈。

I like this dance very much.

我最想去苏州看看。

I want to visit Suzhou most.

张先生非常爱吃川菜。

Mr. Zhang likes to eat Sichuan dishes very much.

2. 成功 chénggōng

成 means ' to become , to accomplish , fully developed , alright '.

他成了有名的艺术家。

He has become a famous artist.

他们两个成了好朋友。

The two of them became close friends.

这件事成了。

This affair has been done successfully.

我明天去看杂技,成吗?

Is it alright that I go to see acrobatics tomorrow?

功 means 'skill, merit'. See the following:

你是有功劳(merit)的人。

You are a man of merits.

李先生每天早上练(liàn—to practice)功。

Mr. Li practices his skill every morning.

The combination 成功 means 'success, successful'. See the following:

祝你们成功!

Wish you success!

他们的表演非常成功。

Their performance is very successful.

3. 特别 tèbié

特 means 'special, unusually, very especially'.

他说得特快。

He speaks unusually quickly.

他九十多岁了,一点病都没有,身体特好。

He is over 90 and he has no illness and is in good health.

别 means 'not, other'. The combination 特别 means 'exceptional, very, especially'.

他特别喜欢你。

He likes you very much.

这个人没有特别的地方。

This person has nothing unusual.

他们学习特别努力。

They study very hard.

4. 爱 ài

爱 means 'to love'.

我爱北京。

I love Beijing.

他不爱吃猪肉。

He does not like eating pork.

他非常爱喝啤酒。

He likes drinking beer very much.

5. 听 tīng

听 means 'to hear, to listen'.

我妈妈喜欢听歌儿(gē—song),不喜欢听音乐(yīnyuè—music).

My mother enjoys listening to songs, not music.

你听到什么了?

What have you heard?

6. 唐代 Tángdài

唐 refers to 'the Tang Dynasty in China (618—907 AD)'. 代, as a noun, means 'generation, dynasty'. The combination 唐代 means 'the Tang Dynasty'.

李白、杜甫都是唐代的大诗人(sh rén—poet)。

Li Bai and Du Fu both are great poets of the Tang Dynasty.

7. 音乐 yīnyuè

音 means 'sound'. 乐 means 'music'. The combination 音乐 means 'music'.

我特别爱听中国音乐。

I like Chinese music very much.

这种音乐非常好听。

This kind of music is very pleasant to hear.

对不起,我不懂音乐。

Sorry, I don't know music.

8. 唱 chàng

唱 means 'to sing'.

他喜欢唱中文歌。

He likes singing Chinese songs.

我爱听她唱的歌。

I like the songs she sang.

9. 歌儿 gēr

歌 means 'song'.

这个歌儿非常难唱。

It's very difficult to sing this song.

我只会唱国歌(guóg —national anthem)

I can only sing the national anthem.

她不会唱歌儿,但是会写歌儿。

She cannot sing (songs), but she can compose songs.

10. 懂 dǒng

懂 means 'to know, to understand'.

你懂吗?

Do you understand?

我不懂中文。

I don't understand Chinese.

It is often used with 难 容易 好 before it. See the following:

汉语难懂。

Chinese is difficult to understand.

他说的容易懂。

What he said is easy to understand.

你的不好懂。

What you have said is not easy to understand.

11. 舞蹈 wǔ dǎo

舞 means 'dance' and 蹈 means 'to step'. The combination 舞蹈 means 'dance'. When you want to say 'to dance', the Chinese equivalent is 跳(tiào—to jump) 舞。You can not say 跳舞蹈。If you want to say 'to learn to dance', you can say '学跳舞'。More examples:

我喜欢学唱歌,不喜欢学跳舞。

I like to study singing, but don't like to study dancing.

我爱看中国舞蹈。

I like watching Chinese dances.

西方舞蹈和东方舞蹈不一样。

Western dance is different from the oriental dance.

12. 和谐 héxié

和 means 'and, with'. In fact 和 also means 'mild, peace, harmony' and 谐 means 'in harmony'. Both are not used alone in modern Chinese. The combination 和谐 means 'harmonious'. See the examples:

他们和我们的关系(guānxi—relation)很和谐。

The relationship between them and us is very harmonious.

这张画儿的颜色非常和谐。

The color of the painting is very harmonious.

13. 反 fǎn

反 means 'in an opposite direction, reverse, inside out, to rebel'. See the following:
他把上衣穿反了。

He has put on his jacket inside out.

李先生问我一个问题,我也反问他一个问题。

Mr. Li asked me a question and I asked him a question in reply.

14. 弹 tán

弹 means 'to snap one's finger(s), to pluck, to play (a musical instrument)'.

我不会弹钢琴(gāngqín—piano).

I can't play the piano.

我会弹木琴(mùqín—xylophone).

I can play xylophone.

15. 琵琶 pípa

琵琶 refers to 'a traditional Chinese plucked string instrument with a fretted finger-board'.

16. 演员 yǎnyuán

演 a verb, means 'to play, to perform, to act as'.

在那个电影里,我演外国学生。他演我的爸爸。

In that film , I acted as a foreign student. He played the role of my father.

员 , a noun , means ‘ person ’. The combination 演员 means ‘ actor or actress , performer ’

他妈妈、姐姐、妹妹和爱人都是女演员。

His mother , elder sister , younger sister and his wife all are actresses.

17. 演技 y nǐ

演 means ‘ to perform ’. 技 means ‘ skill ’. The combination 演技 means ‘ acting , stage performance ’.

他的演技好极了。

His acting is excellent.

演员要努力学习演技。

Actors should study acting hard.

18. 一流 y liú

You know the meanings of 一 (one , first). 流 means ‘ to flow , grade , class ’. The combination means first grade , first rate.

这条河(hé—river)流到哪里？

Where does this river flow to？

河水流到海里。

The rivers flow into the sea.

他是第几流的演员？

Which grade of actors does he belong to？

李先生是一流演员 , 白先生是二流演员 , 王先生是三流演员。

Mr. Li is a first rate actor ; Mr. Bai is a second rate actor and Mr. Wang is a third rate actor.

19. 难度 nándù

You know the meaning of 难. 度 means ‘ degree ’. See the following :

北京夏天很热 , 30 多度。

It is very hot in summer in Beijing. It 's over 30 degrees centigrade.

这杯水 89 度 , 太热 , 不能喝。

This cup of water is 89 degrees and it 's too hot to drink.

The combination 难度 means ‘ difficulty level ’.

这个问题难度不大 , 我可以回答。

The question is not too difficult. I can answer it.

唱这个歌儿 , 难度很大。

It 's very difficult to sing this song.

20. 有点儿 y udi nr

有点儿 is an adverb , meaning ‘ somewhat , slightly ’. It is more often than not used to modify a verb or adjective that indicates something dissatisfactory. For example :

今天天气有点儿热。

It's a bit too hot today.

他有点儿不高兴。

He is a little bit unhappy.

21. 过 guo

过 a suffix, is used after a verb to show that the action took place in the past. The

'Verb - 过' indicates a passed experience, e. g. :

我吃过饭了。

I have eaten.

他们看过中国的杂技。

They have seen Chinese acrobatics.

您去过桂林吗？

Have you ever been to Guilin?

22. 杂技 zájì

杂 means 'mixed'. 技 means 'skill, technique'. The combination 杂技 means 'acrobatics'.

中国杂技很美。

Chinese acrobatics is very beautiful.

23. 场 chǎng

场 means 'a large place, a measure word for games, performances, etc.'. See the following:

商场

shopping center

市场

market

体育场

sports ground

他们每天踢一场足球。

They have a football match daily.

这个地方一天演多少场电影？

How many films are shown in this place?

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



yīn yuè tīng

音乐厅

concert hall, odeum

wǔ dǎo

舞蹈

dance

第三十四课 谈天气 Tán Tiānqì (桂林 Guìlín)

Topic 34 Discussing the Weather in Guilin



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家在桂林的漓江边散步。

The Martins are talking while walking along the Li River in Guilin.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Zǎoshàng hái shì qíng de , xiànzài jiù yǐn le .

大卫 : 早上 还是 晴 的 , 现在 就 阴 了。

(word for word) morning was clear , now suddenly become cloudy

Bèilā : Huì bú huì xià yǔ ?

贝拉 : 会 不 会 下 雨 啊 ?

(word for word) be sure to going to rain

Dàwèi : Yúncǎi bù duō , bú huì xià .

大卫 : 云彩 不 多 , 不 会 下。

(word for word) not cloudy , not rain

Bèilā : Mā jīntiān qìwēn duōshǎo dù ?

贝拉 : 妈 , 今天 气温 多少 度 ?

(word for word) mom , today temperature what 's degree

Ānní : Jìbùqīng le , dàgài shì èrshí shèshìdù ba .

安妮 : 记 不 清 了 , 大概 是 二十 摄氏 度 吧。

(word for word) remember exactly. about 20 degrees Celsius

Dàwèi : Hǎoxiàng wǎnshàng yào guā fēng .

大卫 : 好像 晚上 要 刮 风 。

(word for word) seems evening going to be windy

Bèilā : Bàbā fāngxīn ba ! Fēng bú huì dà , zhèlǐ bú huì guā táifēng de .

贝拉 : 爸爸 放 心 吧 ! 风 不 会 大 , 这里 不 会 刮 台 风 的。

(word for word) dad. don 't worry ! wind not going to big , here is no typhoon

Dàwèi : Nǐ zhēn huì kāi wánxiào .

大卫 : 你 真 会 开 玩 笑 。

(word for word) you really joker

英文 ENGLISH:

- David : It was clear in the morning and has suddenly become cloudy now.
- Bella : Is it going to rain ?
- David : It is not likely , as it 's not as cloudy as that.
- Bella : Mom , what 's the temperature today ?
- Anne : I don 't remember exactly. About 20 degrees Celsius.
- David : It seems it 's going to be windy in the evening.
- Bella : Don 't worry , Dad. It 's not going to blow hard. (Jokingly) There is no typhoon here.
- David : You are really a joker.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 晴 qíng

晴 means ' clear , fine (for weather) '.

今天晴 ,我们去参观吧。

It 's clear today , Let 's go for a visit.

这个地方很少有晴天。

It 's seldom fine in this place.

2. 阴 yīn

阴 means ' cloudy ' . See the following :

天阴了 ,请带雨衣。

It has turned overcast , Bring a raincoat with you , please.

Note : In Chinese thought , 阴 refers to the aspect of feminine and negative. The opposite aspect is 阳 (yáng—sun) referring to being masculine and positive.

3. 会不会……啊 ? Huì bú huì... a ?

As we explained before , questions formed by juxtaposing the affirmative and negative forms show a strong questioning tone. To make it moderate , the modal particle 啊 can be used at the end of the question. Here are more examples :

你是不是王小姐啊 ?

Are you Miss Wang ?

你现在有没有空儿啊 ?

Are you free now ?

您要尝尝啊 ?

Do you want to taste it ?

4. 下雨 xià y

下, as a verb, has appeared many times, such as 下飞机, 下车, 下山, meaning (to go down, to get off). 下 is also used to show natural phenomena about weather (such as 'rain, snow, fog'). See the following:

下雨—to rain

下雪—to snow

下雾(wù)—to fog

下霜(shuāng)—to frost

下雹子(báozǐ)—to hail

5. 云彩 yúncǎi

云 means 'clouds'. See the following:

有云的天很好看。

The sky with clouds looks beautiful.

彩 means 'color'.

他买了很多彩纸。

He has bought a lot of colored paper.

The combination 云彩 means 'clouds'. See the following:

先有云彩, 后下雨。

Clouds appear before the rain.

早上的云彩漂亮极了。

Clouds in the morning look very beautiful.

6. 气温 qìwēn

You know 气 means 'air'. 温 means 'warm, to warm, temperature'. See the following:

我不要冷水, 要温水。

I don't want cold water. I want lukewarm water.

人的体温是摄氏 37 度。

Human body temperature is 37 degrees centigrade.

The combination 气温 means 'air temperature'. See the example:

这里的气温很高, 但是那里很低 (dī—low)。

The temperature here is very high, but the temperature there is very low.

7. 度 dù

度, as a noun, means 'degree'.

这里河水的温度 (wēndù—temperature) 是 20 摄氏度。

The temperature of the water in this river is 20 degrees Celsius.

这个杂技的难度(level of difficulty)非常高。

The degree of difficulty of this acrobatic performance is very high.

8. 记不清 jì bu qīng

记, as a verb, means 'to remember'.

请你们记好你们的中文(zhōngwén—Chinese language)名字。

Please remember your Chinese name well.

不 means 'not'. 清, as an adjective, means 'clear'. 不清 means 'not clear'. In the verb-complement phrase 记不清, 记 is the main verb and 不清 functions as the complement of 记. So the phrase 记不清 means 'do not remember (something) clearly.'

对不起, 我记不清您的名字了。

Sorry, I cannot remember your name clearly.

9. 大概 dàgài

大 means 'big, large'. 概 means 'broad outline'. The combination 大概 means 'general idea, roughly, approximate, probably'.

我只知道一个大概。

I have only a general idea.

你们大概是美国人吧?

You are probably Americans.

10. 二十摄氏度 èrshí shèshì dù

20 degrees by Celsius

In China, temperature is measured on the Celsius thermometer. The conversion of Celsius temperature into Fahrenheit temperature on vice versa is as follows:

$$C = 5/9(F - 32)$$

$$F = 9/5(C + 32)$$

11. 好像 hǎoxiàng

好 means 'good'. 像 means 'be like, to seem, as if'.

他非常像他妈妈。

He looks very much like his mother.

The combination 好像 is an adverb, meaning 'as if, to seem like'.

你看, 那里好像下雨了。

Look, it looks like it's raining over there.

12. 刮风 guā fēng

刮 means 'to blow'. See the following:

大风刮走了那些纸。

The papers have been blown away by a gale.

You know 风 means 'wind'. The combination 刮风 means 'to blow'.

昨天上午刮风,下午下雨。

The wind blew in the morning and it rained in the afternoon yesterday.

13. 风 fēng

风 a noun, has appeared in 风景 meaning 'wind'.

现在(xiànzài—now)刮风了。

The wind is blowing now.

山上的风很大。

The wind is very strong on the mountain.

14. 台风 táifēng

台 means 'terrace, stage, platform, station'.

那个台上有一间小房子。

There is a small room on that terrace.

他们正在舞台上跳舞。

They are dancing on the stage.

这是火车站的第5站台。

This is the 5th platform of the railway station.

这不是北京电视台。

This is not the Beijing TV Station.

But 台风 means 'very violent wind', known as 'typhoon'.

靠海的地方常(cháng—often)刮台风。

Typhoons often come to places near the sea.

15. 玩笑 wánxiào

玩 means 'to play, to have fun'. 笑 means 'laugh, to laugh, to smile, to laugh at'.

他笑了,我也笑了。

He laughed and I laughed, too.

你不要笑我。我做不好,可以学。

Don't laugh at me. I can't do it well, but I can learn.

她笑着对男朋友说:“我爱你。”

She said to her boyfriend with a smile, "I love you."

The combination 玩笑 means 'to joke with, to play a prank on'.

我在开玩笑。你不要当真。

I'm joking. Don't take it seriously.

真只是一个玩笑。你不要不高兴。

This is just a joke. Don't be annoyed.

If you want to know the Chinese for 'to cry', 哭(kū) is the word. See the following:

你为什么哭?

Why are you crying?

他不高兴。她哭了。

He is sad and she cries.

实用汉字认读

Recognition of practical characters



tí nān qì yù bào

天气预报

weather forecast

第三十五课 在上海参观

Zài Shànghǎi Cānguān(1)

Topic 35 Visiting Shanghai(1)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家参观浦东,见到两位外地游客。马丁先生走上前问。
The Martins are visiting Pudong and meet two other tourists.
Mr. Martin goes up and ask them some questions.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Qíng wèn ,zhèlǐ jiù shì Púdōng ma ?

大卫 : 请问,这里就是浦东吗?

(word for word) excuse me , here is Pudong

Yóukè jiǎ : Shì. Nǐ men dì-yī cì lái Shànghǎi ba ?

游客甲 : 是。你们第一次来上海吧?

(word for word) Yes. you first time come Shanghai

Dàwèi : Shì dì-yī cì. Tāng péngyou shuō zhèlǐ yǐ qián shì yí piàn huāngdì.

大卫 : 是第一次。听朋友说这里以前是一片荒地。

(word for word) yes first time. told friend here before was this place wasteland

Yóukè yǐ : Duì. Wǒ men yǐ jī wǎ nián lái guò Shànghǎi.

游客乙 : 对。我们1995年来过上海。

(word for word) yes. We 1995 visited Shanghai.

Nà shíhòu zhèlǐ shénme dà jiànzhù yě méiyǒu.

那时候这里什么大建筑也没有。

that time here any big buildings too have not

Yóukè jiǎ : Zhèxiē gāolóu dàshà dōu shì xīn jiàn de. Biànhuà tài dà le !

游客甲 : 这些高楼大厦都是新建的。变化太大了!

(word for word) All these tall buildings are new. changes great ,

Wǒ men dōu bù gǎn xiāngxìn zìjǐ de yǎnjīng le .

我们都不敢相信自己的眼睛了。

we couldn't believe our own eyes.

Bèilā : Wǒ zuì ài kàn Shànghǎi de Dōngfāng Míngzhū !

贝拉 : 我最爱看上海的东方明珠!

(word for word) I best like see Shanghai's Oriental Pearl

David : Excuse me , is this Pudong ?

Tourist A : Yes. Is this your first time to come to Shanghai ?

David : Yes , this is our first time. My friend told me that it used to be barren here.

Tourist B : Yes. We visited Shanghai in 1995. You could hardly see any big buildings here at that time.

Tourist A : All these tall buildings are new. The changes are so great that we couldn 't believe our own eyes.

Bella : I like Shanghai 's Oriental Pearl best.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 游览 yóulǎn

游 means ' to travel ' here. 览 means ' to view , to look at ' . The combination of them 游览 means ' to travel and see ' .

我们游览过北京、西安、桂林。

We have already seen Beijing , Xi 'an and Guilin.

2. 第 dì

第 a prefix , precedes a numeral to indicate an ordinal number , e. g. :

马丁一家是第一次来中国参观。

This is the first time for the Martins to visit China.

我第一次看中国杂技。

This is my first time to see Chinese acrobatics.

However , ordinal numbers are not always indicated by 第 . In certain cases , ordinal numbers go without 第 . See the following :

a. 你住几层 ?

On which floor do you live ?

b. 我住三层。

I live on the third floor.

3. 次 cì

次 is a measure word used with train number , e. g. :

哪次车 ?

Which train ?

19 次

No. 19

4. 朋友 pényou

Both 朋 and 友 means 'friend'. The combination 朋友 means 'friend'.

他有很多朋友。

He has many friends.

世界很多国家都有我的朋友。

I have friends in many countries all over the world.

5. 听.....说 tīng... shuō

Was given as one verb before, meaning 'to hear, to be told'. In fact, the person who gives the news can be placed between 听 and 说. See the following:

我听朋友说中文不太难。

I was told by a friend that Chinese is not very difficult.

听马先生说他太太最喜欢中国画。

I was told by Mr. Ma that his wife likes Chinese painting best.

6. 一片 yí piàn

You know the meaning of 一. 片 means 'a flat, thin piece, or slice'.

他吃了两片牛肉。

He has eaten two slices of beef.

The combination 一片 means 'a vast sheet of, an expanse of'. See the following:

一片绿树非常漂亮。

The stretch of green trees is very beautiful.

那里的一片高楼非常好。

The numerous tall buildings there are very nice.

7. 荒地 huāng dì

荒 means 'deserted'.

荒草 weeds

荒山 a barren hill

地 means 'land'. We learned it in '地图', '地方'. More examples:

大地 the earth

地点 location, place

地球 the globe

地下 underground

The combination 荒地 means 'wasteland, uncultivated land'.

十年前, 这个地方是荒地。

This place was wasteland 10 years ago.

8. 过 guò

过 is a verbal suffix to indicate that the action is a past experience, i. e., it once happened in the past. For example:

我以前来过中国。(这不是第一次。)

I have been to China before. (This is not the first time.)

我去过西安。(我知道那是一个古老的城市。)

I have been to Xi 'an. (I know it is an old city.)

我吃过一次中餐。(我很喜欢。)

I have eaten Chinese food once. (I like it very much.)

The negative form is formed by putting 没 before the predicate verb. It means the action has never happened before.

我以前没来过中国。(这是第一次。)

I haven 't been to China before. (This is the first time.)

我没去过西安。(我不知道西安什么样子。)

I have not been to Xi 'an. (I don 't know what Xi 'an looks like.)

我没吃过中餐。(我不知道好吃不好吃。)

I have never eaten Chinese food before. (I don 't know whether it is delicious.)

9. 那时候 nà shíh u

那 has appeared many times , meaning ' that '. 时候 has also been given many times , too , meaning ' time , when '. The combination 那时候 means ' that time , then '. Sometimes it can be shortened as ' 那时 '. See the following :

他那时(候)10 岁。

He was 10 years old then (at that time).

1950 年那时候 ,他还没出生(ch sh na—to be born)呢。

He was not born yet in 1950.

10. 建筑 jiànzhù

建 means ' to build , to establish '.

李先生要在这里建商店。

Mr. Li will build a shop here.

他想把学 校(xuéxiào—school)建在山上。

He wants to build the school on the hill.

筑 means ' to construct '.

他们正在筑路 (lù—road)。

They are constructing a road.

The combination of them 建筑 means ' to build , to construct , building '.

这些高大建筑是在去年建筑的。

These big and tall buildings were built last year.

11. 什么...也没 shénme... y méi

In a negative sentence like this ,什么 before the noun indicates something indefinite.

什么 does not really mean ' what ' ,but ' any '. Other examples are :

他什么东西也没买。

He didn 't buy anything at all.

我什么书也没看。

I have not read any books at all.

他打了一个电话 ,可是什么也没问。

He made a call ,but did not ask anything at all.

It is common that interrogatives are not used in questions for emphasizing what the interrogative refers to. See the following :

你去哪儿都可以。

You can go anywhere.

您问谁都行。

You can ask anybody.

我什么时候都在那里。

I will be there any time.

你喜欢哪个东西 ,你就拿哪个。

You can take anyone you like.

12. 高楼 gāo lóu

高 is an adjective , meaning ' high , tall '.

他 1.7 米。你 1.8 米。你比他高。

He is 1.7 meters high. You are 1.8 meters tall. You are taller than he.

楼 has appeared for several times. It is a noun , meaning ' storied building , floor '. So the combination 高楼 means ' tall building '.

上海的高楼比北京多。

Shanghai has more tall buildings than Beijing.

13. 大厦 dà shà

厦 means ' tall building , mansion ' which is often used with 大 before it .

那个大厦是电视台。

That tall building is the TV station.

白林先生住在这个大厦里。

Mr. Bai Lin lives in this tall building.

14. 新建 xīn jiàn

新 means ' new ' as an adjective.

他是一个新司机。

He is a new driver.

这个城市很新。

This city is very new.

新 also can function as an adverb , meaning ' newly , recently '.

我新买了一本书 (sh —book).

I have bought a book recently.

建 as a verb means ' to build , to establish '.

北京建了很多大楼。

Many tall buildings have been built in Beijing.

The combination 新建 means ' to build recently '.

我不喜欢住新建的楼。

I don 't like living in newly-built buildings.

15. 变化 biànhuà

变 means 'to change'.

这里的气候变了。

The climate here has changed.

我住的地方没变。

The place I live has not changed.

化 also means 'to change ,to melt'. The combination of them 变化 means 'to change , change'.

从 1995 年到现在 ,这里有很大变化。

Great changes have taken place here from 1995 to the present.

16. 敢 gǎn

敢 means 'to dare', which often functions as an operative verb.

那个地方不安全 ,没有人敢去那里。

No one dares to go to that place since it is not safe it.

你们应该敢想 ,敢说 ,不要怕。

You should dare to think ,dare to speak ,and don't be afraid.

17. 相信 xiānxìn

相 ,as you learned in 相识 ,means 'each other'.

他们相爱一年多了。

They have been in love for more than one year.

信 means 'to believe'.

我不信他会明天就走。

I don't believe that he will leave tomorrow.

The combination of them 相信 means 'to believe ,to trust'.

谁相信他 ?

Who trusts him ?

我们应该相信他的话。

We should believe what he said.

信 also means 'letter'.

这是你的信。

Here is a letter for you.

18. 自己 zìjǐ

自 means 'self'. 己 means 'oneself'. The combination 自己 means 'oneself one's own'.

我自己去那里。

I go there by myself.

你的东西 ,你自己拿。

Take your things by yourself.

自己找自己的行李。

Everyone is looking for his own baggage.

19. 眼睛 y nǐna

眼 means 'eye' here.

那个人的左眼比右眼大。

That person's left eye is bigger than his right eye.

睛 means 'eyeball'. The combination of them 眼睛 means 'eye'.

她的眼睛非常小。

Her eyes are very small.

20. 东方明珠 Dōngfāng míngzhū

东 means 'east'. 方 means 'direction'. 明 means 'bright'. 珠 means 'pearl'. The combination of 东方 means 'the east, orient'. The combination of them 东方明珠 means 'oriental bright pearl'. In fact, this is the name of the TV tower in Shanghai.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



jīng jī kāi fā qū

经济开发区

economic development area

Wài tān

外滩

The Bund

第三十六课 在上海参观

Zài Shànghǎi Cānguān(2)

Topic 36 Visiting Shanghai(2)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家参观上海城隍庙。

The Martins are visiting the Town God's Temple in Shanghai.

对话 DIALOGUE

nní : Shàngh íshì Zhōngguó zuì xiàndàihuà de chéngshì ,
 安妮 : 上海 是 中国 最 现代化 的 城市 ,
 (word for word) Shanghai is China 's most modernized city

méixi ngdào hái y u zhèyàng chuánt ng de jì dào .
 没 想到 还 有 这样 传统 的 街道。
 didn 't expect have such traditional streets

Dàwèi : Zhè shì f ícháng dì xíng de Zhōngguó chuánt ng jiànzhù .
 大卫 : 这 是 非常 典型 的 中国 传统 建筑 。
 (word for word) this is very typical Chinese traditional style architecture

Bèil : Zh n piàoli ng . Bà , tngshuMS Zhōngguó ,
 贝拉 : 真 漂亮 。爸 , 听说 苏州 、
 (word for word) really beautiful. dad , heard Suzhou
 Hángzhōngguó de yuánlín jiànzhù shì shìjiè wénmíng de .
 杭州 的 园林 建筑 是 世界 闻名 的。
 Hangzhou gardens architecture are world-famous

Dàwèi : Duì .
 大卫 : 对 。
 (word for word) that 's right

nní : Zhōngguó y u jù sùhuà : “ Shàng y u ti ntáng ,
 安妮 : 中国 有 句 俗话 : “ 上 有 天堂 ,
 (word for word) China have a architecture : ‘ heaven have paradise ,
 xià y u S , Háng ” .
 下 有 苏 、 杭 ”。
 on earth have Su Hang '

Bèil : S zhōngguó , Hángzhōngguó lí zhèr y u n ma ?
 贝拉 : 苏州 、 杭州 离 这儿 远 吗 ?
 (word for word) Suzhou Hangzhou from here far

Dàwèi : W kàn dìtú le , bù y u n . W men k y chōngshí n qù kànkàn .
 大卫 : 我 看 地图 了 , 不 远 。 我们 可以 抽 时间 去 看看 。
 (word for word) I look the map , not far . we can find some time to go a look

Bèil : Nà tài h o le !
 贝拉 : 那 太 好 了 !
 (word for word) that 's great

Anne : Shanghai is China 's most modernized city. I didn 't expect to see such traditional streets.

David : This temple 's architecture is typical of traditional Chinese style.

Bella : Really beautiful ,Dad. I heard the gardens in Suzhou and Hangzhou are world-famous.

David : That 's right.

Anne : There is a saying in China that goes : ' There is paradise in heaven and Suzhou and Hangzhou on earth '.

Bella : Are Suzhou and Hangzhou far from here ?

David : I have checked the map and they are not far. We can set aside some time to go and have a look.

Bella : That 's great !

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 现代化 xiàndàihuà

现 means ' now , modern , appear '. 代 means ' historical period , generation '. See the following :

我昨天看了一幅唐代的画。

Yesterday ,I saw a painting from the Tang Dynasty.

他们家几代人都住在这里。

Several generations of his family have been living here.

化 means ' to melt ,to change '.

今天天气很暖和 地上的雪都化了。

It is very warm today ,so the snow on the ground has melted.

化 functions as a verb suffix meaning ' -ize , -ify '. See the following :

绿化——他们在绿化(to plant trees ,forestation)北京。

They are planting trees in and around Beijing.

西化——学习西方不是西化。

To learn from Western countries does not mean to become westernized.

The combination 现代 means ' modern '. The combination 现代化 means ' to modernize , modernization '. See the following :

中国的现代化很快。

The modernization of China has been going on quickly.

中国越来越现代化。

China is getting more and more modernized.

2. 城市 chéngshì

城(chéng) means 'city wall'. 市(shì) means 'market, municipality'. The combination of them 城市 means 'city'.

中国有很多大城市。

China has many big cities.

这个城市很漂亮。

This city is very pretty.

3. 没想到 méi xi ngdào

didn't expect

The negative form of the phrasal verb 'V + V' or 'V + adjective' is to put the negative adverb 没 before it.

我没想到西安有这么多名胜古迹。

I didn't expect there are so many historic sites in Xi'an.

我没听到他的介绍。

I didn't hear his introduction.

他没吃完饭。

He has not finished his meal yet.

4. 这样 zhèyàng

You know '这'(this). 样 means 'appearance, shape, pattern, kind of' which is often used with suffix '子' or '儿' if used alone in modern Chinese.

这两件衣服样子一样, 颜色也一样。

Both of the coats are the same in shape and color.

我有三样东西你没有见过。

I have three things that you have never seen.

几年没见, 他还是那个样子。

I haven't seen him for several years, but he still looks the same.

The combination 这样 means 'this way, like this'.

这样做好, 那样做不好。

To do it this way is good. To do it that way is bad.

请你不要这样看我。

Don't look at me like that.

我喜欢吃这样的饭。

I like to have this kind of food.

5. 传统 chuántǒng

传 means 'to pass on, to hand down'. See the following:

请把这件东西传给他们看一下。

Please pass on this thing to them to have a look.

请你把足球传给我。

Please pass me the football.

这是古代传下来的画。

This is a painting handed down from ancient times.

不要把我说的话传出去。

Don't let out what I said.

统 means 'interconnected system'. The combination 传统 means 'tradition'.

这是一个好传统,我们一定要学习。

This is a good tradition and we must follow it.

6. 街道 jiē dào

As you know 街 means 'street', 道 means 'way, road'. The combination 街道 means 'street, residential district'.

这个城市的街道很好,我非常喜欢。

The streets in this city are very nice and I like them very much.

他负责街道工作。

He is in charge of residential district affairs.

7. 典型 diǎnxíng

典 means 'standard work of scholarship'.

这是一本非常好的汉语词典(cídiǎn—dictionary)。

This is a very good Chinese dictionary.

型 means 'mould, model, type, pattern'.

人的血(xi—blood)有四种:A型,B型,AB型和O型。

Human blood has four types: type A, type B, type AB and type O.

你的自行车是新型的,很好看。

Your bike is a new model and looks nice.

The combination 典型 means 'model, typical'. See the following:

林先生是一个好典型,李先生是一个坏(huài—bad)典型。

Mr. Lin is a positive example and Mr. Li is a negative example.

这件事非常典型。

This matter is very typical.

8. 漂亮 piàoliang

漂亮 means 'beautiful'.

这地方很漂亮。

This place is very beautiful.

马丁小姐很漂亮。

Miss Martin is very beautiful.

9. 园林 yuánlín

园 means 'an area of land for growing plants, park, garden'.

这是谁的菜园?

Whose vegetable garden is this?

我去苹果园买苹果,又新鲜又便宜。

I'll go to the apple orchard to buy apples that are fresh and cheap.

林 means 'forest'.

一棵(k —measure word)树不成林。

One tree cannot be called a 'forest'.

The combination 园林 means 'garden'.

我们要保护(b ohù—protect)古代园林。

We should protect ancient gardens.

北京的颐和园(Yíhéyuán—the Summer Palace)以前是一个皇家(huángjī —imperial family)园林。

The Summer Palace in Beijing used to be a garden of the imperial family.

10. 句 jù

句 means 'sentence' often used with the suffix 子. See the following :

这个句子真难,我看不懂。

This sentence is too difficult for me to understand.

句 also functions as a measure word for speech. See the examples :

他说的几句话我都听懂了。

I understood the few sentences he said.

这句话纯粹是一句俗话。

This sentence is purely a proverb.

11. 俗话 sùhuà

俗 means 'custom, convention, common, in poor taste'.

我是个俗人。

I am a common man.

他穿得太俗气。

The clothes he wears are in poor taste.

这里的风俗(fēngsú)跟那里不一样。

The customs here are different from there.

话 means 'words, speech, talk'. See the following :

让我说几句话。

Let me say a few words.

话不多,可是意思很深。

He says very little, but it is profound in meaning.

The combination 俗话 means 'common saying'.

12. 天堂 tiāntáng

天 means 'sky, heaven' here. 堂 means 'the main room of a house, hall'.

这是我们学校的食堂。

This is the dining hall of our school.

The combination 天堂 means 'paradise'.

谁也不知道天堂怎么样。

No one knows how paradise looks.

13. 苏州 Sū zhōu

Suzhou is the name of a city situated in the delta of the Yangtze River , to the east of Taihu Lake. The city was founded in the sixth century B. C. by a prince of the Wu State. Suzhou 's once-private gardens are celebrated throughout the country for their beauty.

14. 杭州 Hángzhōu

Hangzhou is the capital of Zhejiang Province. It is well known for its natural beauty , especially the attractive West Lake. 苏杭 (Sū Háng) is a common way of referring to both cities together.

15. 抽时间 chōu shíjiān

抽 means ' to take out , to draw '.

她病了 , 需要 (xū yào—need) 抽血。

She is ill and needs to have some blood drawn.

从那些纸里 , 他抽走了一张红纸。

He drew out a piece of red paper from a pile of papers.

时间 means ' time '. The combination 抽时间 means ' to try to find time '. See the following.

他工作很忙 , 但是还抽时间学习英语。

Despite the pressure of work , he manages to find some time to study English.

Note 空儿 (free time) can be used to replace 时间。

我太忙 , 抽不出空儿去看你 , 请你原谅。

Please excuse me , for I am too busy and cannot find time to see you.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters

Chénahuána miào

城隍庙

Town God 's Temple

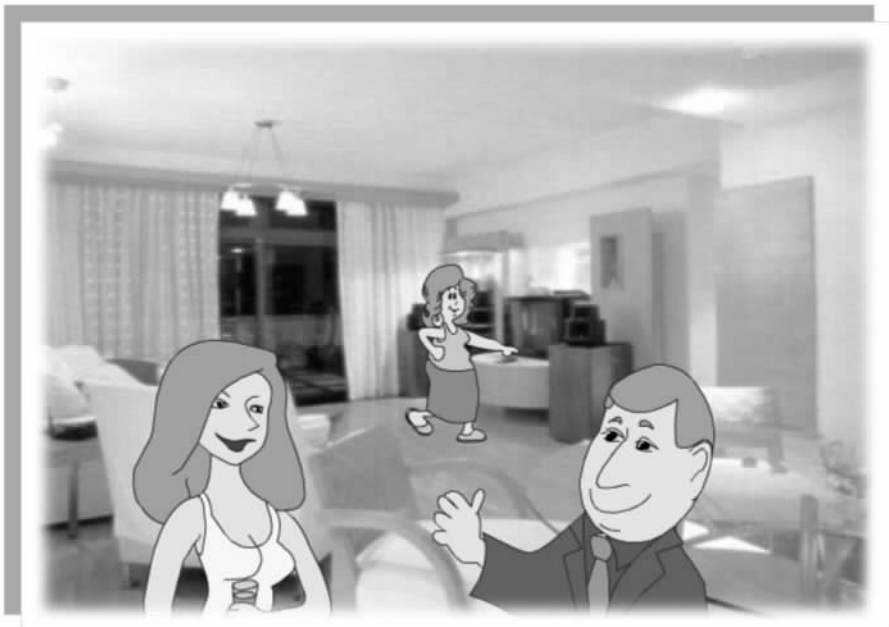
Yù yuán

豫园

The Yu Garden

第三十七课 看电视 Kàn Diànshì (体育节目 T yù Jiémù)

Topic 37 Watching TV (Sports)



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家正在观看电视上的乒乓球赛。

The Martins are watching a table tennis match on TV.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : Bà ,p ngp ngqiú sàijiéshù le . D de zh n jngc i.

贝拉：爸，乒乓球赛结束了。打得真精彩。

(word for word) dad , table tennis match is over. played wonderfully

Dàwèi : Jiéguó rúhé ?

大卫：结果如何？

(word for word) result what 's

Bèil : Zhōngguóduìyínglè Rìbēnduì.

贝拉：中国队赢了日本队。

(word for word) Chinese team beat Japanese team

ānní : Sānbǐyì ,Rìbēnduìshūle .

安妮：三比一，日本队输了。

(word for word) three to one. Japanese team lost

Dàwèi : Wǒ tīngshuō ,liùshíniándài Rìbēn p ngp ngqiú shu píng h gāo .

大卫：我听说，六十年代日本乒乓球水平很高。

(word for word) I heard ,60 's year Japanese ping-pong team rate very high

Bèil : Tāmen déguò shìjiè guànjūn mǎ ?

贝拉：他们得过世界冠军吗？

(word for word) they ever won world championship

Dàwèi : Déguò ,bùzhǐ yí cì ne .

大卫：得过，不止一次呢。

(word for word) ever won , not one time

Bèil : Bùyào xiǎokàn tāmen de shíli .

贝拉：不要小看他们的实力。

(word for word) Don 't underestimate their strength.

英文 ENGLISH:

Bella : Dad , the table tennis match is over . They played wonderfully .

David : What 's the result ?

Bella : The Chinese team beat the Japanese team .

Anne : Yes , three to one . The Japanese team lost .

David : I heard the Japanese ping-pong team was first rate in the 60 's .

Bella : Have they ever won the world championship ?

David : Yes , they did , several times .

Bella : Don 't underestimate their strength .

注释 : |||▶▶

1. 乒乓球 p ngp ngqiú

球 means ' ball ' . 乒乓 is an onomatopoeia referring to the sound of playing table tennis . It also refers to table tennis itself when talking about sports . The combination 乒乓球 means ' table tennis ' .

真不好意思 , 我不会打乒乓球。

I 'm really sorry . I can 't play table tennis .

打乒乓球是一种非常好的体育运动 (t yù yùnd ng—physical exercise) .

To play table tennis is a very good sport .

2. 赛 sài

赛 means ' match , game , to compete ' .

我们队和你们队明天赛足球。

Our team and your team will have a football match tomorrow .

我们赛一赛 , 看谁更好。

Let us have a competition and see who can do better .

3. 结束 jiéshù

You learned 结 in 结账 . 结 has many meanings such as ' to tie , to knit , to conclude ' .

束 means ' to bind , bunch ' . The combination 结束 means ' to end , to close ' . See the following :

演出晚上九点结束 , 结束后我去看你。

The show will end at 9 p. m. and I 'll go to see you after the show .

杂技还没有结束 , 快去看吧 !

The acrobatic show has not ended yet. Go and see it quickly !

4. 打 d

打 has been discussed in 打开, meaning 'to open ,to play ,to beat 'etc. . In this topic , 打在 '打得很精彩' ,it means 'to play'.

5. 得 dé

得, in this topic ,has appeared in '打得很精彩' and '得过冠军吗?'. 得(de) in '打得很精彩' functions as a structural particle placed between a verb and its complement.

他说汉语说得很快。

He speaks Chinese very fast.

得(dé) functions as a verb in '得过冠军吗?', meaning 'to get ,to gain ,be ready'.

谁得了第一名?

Who has won first place (the championship)?

他得了很多钱。

He has got a lot of money.

早饭得了,请你快来吃饭。

Breakfast is ready. Please hurry up. Come and have your meal.

In spoken Chinese ,得 can also function as an auxiliary verb and it should be pronounced 'd i' ,meaning 'must ,have to'. See the following :

去中国工作(gōngzu —to work) ,你得说汉语。

You have to speak Chinese if you work in China.

他妈妈病(bìng—ill)了,得去医院(yīyuàn—hospital).

His mother is ill and she has to go to the hospital.

You studied 得 before. The structural particle 得 is the marker introducing the post-modifier of a verb. Here the post-modifier makes a comment on the action ,therefore the action is usually a habitual or past one (so that it is possible to make a comment on it). For example :

我看那场演出了,演得不太好。

I saw that performance and it was not too good.

你看那辆出租车,开得真快。

Look at that taxi. It runs really fast.

Different question forms can be used to ask somebody to make a comment on a certain action.

那辆出租车开得快不快?

Is that taxi running fast or not?

6. 精彩 jīngcǎi

精, as a noun , means 'essence ,extract ,sperm'. 精, as an adjective , means 'refined ,excellent ,perfect ,smart'. 彩 means 'color'. The combination 精彩, an adjective , means 'brilliant ,splendid ,wonderful'.

这个表演非常精彩。

This performance is very wonderful.

7. 结果 jiégu

You learned both 结 and 果. The combination of them 结果 means 'result'.

谁也没有想到会有这样的结果。

No one expected to see a result like this.

他计划在中国学习一年汉语,可是结果他学了三年。

He planned to spend one year studying Chinese in China, but the result was that he studied for three years there.

8. 如何 rúhé

You learned 如 in 如果。何 means 'what, which'. See the following:

何人拿走了我的书?

Who has taken my book away?

你知道那个书店在何处?

Do you know where the bookshop is?

The combination 如何 means 'how, what'. See the following:

这本词典如何?

How is this dictionary?

你们如何去北京?坐飞机还是坐火车?

How do you go to Beijing, by plane or by train?

9. 队 duì

队 means 'team, a row of people'.

我们学校(xuéxiào—school)有篮球(lánqiú—basketball)队、足球(zúqiú—football)队、排球(páiqiú—volleyball)队,没有羽毛(y máo—feather)球队(badminton). Our school has a basketball team, a football team and volleyball team, but no badminton team.

10. 赢 yíng

赢 means 'to win'. See the following:

你说谁能赢这场比赛?

Do you know who can win this match?

我赢了一百万美元。

I won one million U. S. dollars.

11. 三比一 sān bǐ yī

Originally, the verb 比 means 'to compare'. It is used in the proportion formula and here it marks the score in a game, competition, etc..

5: 3 五比三 (five to three)

8: 9 八比九 (eight to nine)

12: 14 十二比十四 (twelve to fourteen)

12. 输 sh

输 means 'to lose, to donate, to transport, transfusion'. See the following:

我们队输给了你们队。

Our team was defeated by your team.

他病得很重 需要(x yào—need) 输血。

He is seriously ill and needs a blood transfusion.

13. 年代 niándài

You learned 年(year) and 代(epoch). The combination 年代 means 'times, year'.

See the following:

这是八十年的事情。

This is an event that happened during the eighties.

我不知道这是什么年代的画。

I don't know when the picture was painted.

14. 水平 shu píng

You know 水 means 'water'. 平 means 'level, even, in a draw'. See the following:

小心 路不平。

Be careful, the road is not level.

请把地平一平。

Please level the ground.

这场足球比赛踢平了。

This football game ended in a draw.

The combination 水平 means 'level'.

他们的生活水平很高。

Their living standard is very high.

谁的汉语水平最高?

Whose Chinese level is the highest?

15. 冠军 guànjūn

冠 means 'to put on a hat, first place, hat' which is not common to be used alone 军 means 'army, troops'. See the following:

中国有自己的军队(duì—team).

China has its own army.

我不是军人。

I am not a soldier.

The combination 冠军 means 'champion, the first place in a contest'.

当(dāng—to be)冠军非常不容易。

It's not easy to be a champion.

李先生是冠军, 我不是。

Mr. Li is the champion, but I am not.

The Chinese word for 'runner-up' is 亚军(yànjūn). As you know, medals are given to

winners in sport games. Here are words you may want to know :

金(jīn—gold) 牌(pái—here means medal)——gold medal

银(yín—silver) 牌——silver medal

铜(tóng, is short for qīngtóng—bronze) 牌——bronze medal

16. 不止 bùzhǐ

不 means 'not'. 止 means 'to stop'. See the following :

从9月2日起到10月2日止,我们在中国参观。

We will visit China from the 2nd of September to the 2nd of October.

不做完这些我就工作不止。

I'll not stop until these tasks have been done.

他不止一次去中国。

He has been to China more than once.

17. 实力 shí lì

实 means 'solid, reality, true, honest'.

这是一件事实。

This is a true story.

里面不是空的,是实的。

It's not empty inside, it's solid.

李明先生很实,不会骗人。

Mr. Li is very honest and he would not cheat others.

力 means 'strength, power' which is often used with other words. See the following :

力量(liàng—strength, force)

力气(lìqì—physical strength)

力学(lìxué—mechanics)

电力(diànlì—electric power)

水力(shuǐ lì—hydraulic power)

我们队的实力不如他们队的实力。

Our team is not as strong as their team.

你不要小看(xiǎo kàn—to belittle) 我们的实力。

Don't underestimate our strength.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters

diàn shì jié mù bǐ o

电视节目表

TV program

shōu fèi diàn shì

收费电视

Pay TV channel

第三十八课 看杂技 Kàn Zájì

Topic 38 An Acrobatic Show



情境 SITUATION:

在广州某大剧场, 马丁一家正在看杂技表演。

The Martins are watching an acrobatic show in a theater in Guangzhou.

对话 DIALOGUE

Bèil : M ,n kàn ,nàme dà de rén zu n jìn nàme xi o de t ng l ,
贝拉： 妈 ,你看 ,那么大的人 钻进 那么 小的 桶里 ,
(word for word) mom ,you Look ,as big as that a man into such a small bucket
zh n shén le !
真 神 了 !
incredible

nní : G ng cáide D ng W n ,y f ícháng jng c í.
安妮： 刚才 的“顶 碗” ,也 非常 精彩。
(word for word) just now “bowl balancing” ,also wonderful

Dàwèi : Shì ,d ngzhe nàme duMw n ,
大卫： 是啊 ,顶着 那么 多 碗 ,
(word for word) really ,to carry on the head a pile of bowls ,
háizu g onán d ngzu .
还 做 高难 动作 。
and to do highly-skilled and difficult action
Zh n w íxi n ,ràng rén tíx n diào d n .
真 危险 ,让 人提心 吊胆 。
so dangerous ,let audience very apprehensive

nní : Y nyuán de gMgfu zh nh o.
安妮： 演员 的 功夫 真 好。
(word for word) acrobats skill really well

Bèil : T men de gMgfu shìz nme liànch í l íde ne ?
贝拉： 他们 的 功夫 是 怎么 练 出来 的呢 ?
(word for word) they skill how trained out

Dàwèi : Yíding shì cóng xi o jiù tí nti n liàn .
大卫： 一定 是 从 小 就 天天 练。
(word for word) must since childhood have every day trained

英文 ENGLISH:

Bella : Look , Mom , a man as big as that can get into such a small bucket. That 's incredible !

Anne : The “bowl balancing” just now is also wonderful.

David : How can the acrobat manage such extremely difficult movements with a pile of bowls on head ?It looks so dangerous that the audience feels very apprehensive.

Anne : The acrobats are really well trained.

Bella : How could they become so skillful ?

David : They must have trained every day since childhood.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 杂技 zájì

杂 means ‘ miscellaneous , mixed ’.

来这里的人很杂 男的、女的、中国人、外国人都有。

All kinds of people come here a mixture of men and women , Chinese and foreigners.

技 means ‘ skill ’.

他的车技很高。

His trick-cycling technique is superb.

The combination of them 杂技 means ‘ acrobatics ’.

2. 那么 Nàme

Here in this sentence , 那么 (nàme—so , then) introduces an inference from the above :

A. 这里有个电子邮局。

There is an electronic post office.

B. 那么 我可以在这里发传真了。

Then , I can send e-mails here.

A. 现在不下雨了。

The rain has stopped now.

B. 那么我们可以去外边玩了。

Then , we can go outside and play.

3. 钻 zuān

钻 means 'to go deep into/through'.

那个人钻进汽车就走了。

The man got into a car and drove away.

大人钻小桶。

A big man squeezes through a small bucket.

4. 小 xiǎo

小 means 'small, little, young'.

这个苹果小, 那个苹果大。

This apple is smaller, and that one is bigger.

这是一个小碗。

This is a small bowl.

李先生小, 林先生大。

Mr. Li is younger and Mr. Lin is older.

In the text, 小 in the sentence '一定是从小就天天练' means 'childhood'.

她从小说汉语。

He has been speaking Chinese since childhood.

5. 桶 tǒng

桶 means 'tub, pail, bucket, barrel'.

红色的桶比绿色的桶高。

The red bucket is taller than the green one.

那个啤酒桶是饭馆的。

That beer barrel belongs to the restaurant.

桶 can function as a measure word:

谁能喝一桶水?

Who can drink a pail of water?

6. 神 shén

神 means 'god'.

他是人, 不是神。

He is a man, not God.

神 also means 'supernatural, magical' functioning as an adjective.

这个人真神了, 什么他都知道。

This person is so incredible that it seems he knows everything.

7. 刚才 gāngcái

刚 means 'only a short while ago'.

他刚来过这里。

He was here just now.

我刚吃过饭。

I have had my meal just now.

刚 also means 'just , exactly'.

他刚 15。

He is just 15 years old.

才 , which has been discussed before , means ' not till ' . The combination of them 刚才 means ' a moment ago ; just ' .

他刚才说他不 去参观那个地方。

He said a moment ago that he would not visit that place.

他就是刚才找你的人。

He is the person who came to see you just now.

8. 顶 d na

顶 has many meanings , such as ' the crown of the head ' (头tóu—head 顶) , ' peak ' (山顶) , functioning as a noun. Here it is a verb , meaning ' to carry on the head ' .
她顶着一桶水。

She is carrying a pail of water on her head.

林太太顶着什么东西 ?

What is it that Mrs. Lin carrying on her head ?

那个演员头上顶着很多碗。

That actress is carrying many bowls on her head.

9. 碗 w n

碗 means ' bowl ' .

这是你的饭碗。

This is your rice bowl.

碗 can function as a measure word.

请你喝这碗酒。

Please drink this bowl of wine.

10. 是啊 shì

You know 是 means ' to be ' . 啊 is an interjection . The combination 是啊 is used to express agreement.

是啊 , 我跟你一样去长城参观。

Yes , I am going to visit the Great Wall as you do.

11. 着 zhe

You learned 着 in Topic 31 , which is suffixed to a verb to indicate a continuous state. Since it is an important grammar point , more examples are given below :

他在王先生前边坐着呢。

He is sitting in front of Mr. Wang.

李先生举着一个牌子 (páizi—sign) , 在等马丁先生。

Mr. Li is holding a sign , waiting for Mr. Martin.

饭店旁边停着一辆出租车。

There is a taxi parked near the hotel.

12. 做 zu

做 means 'to do, to make'.

我每天给他们做饭。

I cook for them every day.

这些西餐是我妈妈做的。

The western-style food was made by my mother.

我害怕,不敢做高难动作。

I am frightened, and dare not do the extremely difficult movement.

13. 高难 a onán

As you know that 高 means 'high, tall' and 难 means 'difficult'. The combination of the 高难 means 'highly-skilled and difficult'.

他们做了很多高难的表演。

They did many high-skilled and difficult performances.

我没见过这样高难的动作。

I have never seen such highly-skilled and difficult movement.

14. 动作 d nazu

动 means 'to move, to touch'.

请别动我的东西。

Don't touch my things, please.

站在这里,别动!

Stay here, don't move!

作 means 'to work, to do, to act'

作人要真。

As a man, one must be honest/sincere.

他正在作画。

He is painting a picture.

作 also means 'a literary or art work'.

这是您的大作。

This is your work (of literature or art).

The combination of them 动作 means 'movement, action'.

她的动作很快。

She acts very fast.

他作体操的动作真好看。

His gymnastics ability is really graceful.

15. 危险 w xī n

危 means 'danger' which is not used alone in modern Chinese. 险 means 'dangerous'. The combination of them 危险 means 'danger, dangerous'.

我们不怕危险。

We are not afraid of danger.

附近常有老虎出现(lǐ oh —tiger) 这里很危险。

Tigers often come here ,it is dangerous here.

16. 让 ràn

让 means ' to let , to allow '. The pattern ' 让 + someone + do (+ something) ' is very common in modern Chinese.

您让我想想。

Let me think it over.

她不让我喝酒。

She doesn 't allow me to drink wine.

谁让你去参观兵马俑？

Who introduced you to the Terra Cotta Warriors ?

17. 精彩 jīn cǎi

精 means ' refined , picked ' here. 彩 means ' color '. The combination of them 精彩 means ' splendid , wonderful , brilliant '.

她们的表演太精彩了。

Their performance is wonderful.

最精彩的节目是什么？

What is the most wonderful show ?

这次比赛打得真精彩。

This match is really well played.

18. 提心吊胆 tí xīn diào dǎn

提 means ' to carry in one 's hand with the arm down '.

她提着一瓶酒。

She is carrying a bottle of wine.

心 means ' heart '. 吊 means ' to hang , to suspend '. 胆 means ' gall (bladder) , boldness '. 胆 + 小 (胆小) means ' timid '. 胆 + 大 (胆大) means ' bold '.

那个人非常胆小。但是 ,他太太非常胆大。

That man is a chicken heart , but his wife is very bold.

The combination of them 提心吊胆 is an idiom meaning ' be on tenterhooks ', ' to have one 's heart in one 's mouth ', ' to be very anxious or apprehensive. '

白真先生做什么都是提心吊胆。

Mr. Bai Zhen is always apprehensive no matter what he does.

那个地方很安全 ,你不要提心吊胆。

That place is safe , don 't be worried.

19. 演员 yǎn yuán

As you know 演 means ' to play , to act '.

她正在演节目。

She is just now in a show.

员 means ' a person engaged in some field of activity '.

他是商店售货(shū huò —to sell things)员。

He is a shop assistant.

The combination of them 演员 means ‘actor or actress , performer’.

我是一个电影演员。

I am a film actor.

20. 功夫 gōngfu

功 means ‘skill , achievement’. 夫 means ‘labor , power’. The combination of them 功夫 means ‘skill , attainments’ here.

那个杂技演员真有功夫。

The acrobat’s skill is really superb.

高先生的功夫好。

Mr. Gao’s gongfu (skill) is good.

21. 练 liàn

练 means ‘to exercise , to practice’.

高小天每天练英语。

Gao Xiaotian practices his English every day.

他想练“顶碗”。

He wants to practice to “balance bowls” on his head.

多练 ,您就会了。

Practice more and you will master it.

22. 出来 chū lái

出 , as a verb , has many meanings , but the most common one is ‘to go out , to exit’.

See the following :

他要出国旅行。

I will go traveling abroad.

来 , as a verb , means ‘to come’.

他们来中国了吗？

Have they come to China yet？

The combination 出来 means ‘to come out’ and the physical action of coming is moving towards the speaker.

你看 ,他从家里出来了。

Look , he is coming out from his house.

Remember , in Chinese , some verbs can function as compliments of direction , result , etc. of an action physically or abstractly. 出来 is one of these verbs. See the following :

他从这个商店里走出来了。

He walked out from that shop. (physical direction).

他把他的名字写出来了。

He wrote his name. (physical result).

我不知道她是怎么想出来的。

I don’t know how she has thought out (the idea). (abstract result).

23. 从.....就.....cóna... jiù...

You learned 从(cóna—from) and 就(jiù—just then). This pattern is often used to show 'a start point of time duration for an event'.

他从1990年就在中国工作了。

He has been working in China since 1990.

钱明先生从离开北京就自己开车了。

Mr. Qian Ming has been driving a car himself since he left Beijing.

24. 就 jiù

The adverb 就 is used when the speaker feels that something takes place earlier, sooner, etc. than expected.

大卫说十点钟到,可是他九点钟就到了

David said he would come at 10 o'clock, but he arrived at 9.

他们等了三分钟,就来了一辆出租车。

They had just waited for 3 minutes before a taxi came.

Opposite to 就, when the speaker feels that something takes place later, quicker, etc. than expected, the adverb 才(cái) is used. See the examples:

大卫说上午十点钟到,可是他下午两点才到。

David said he would arrive at 10 am, but he arrived at 2 pm.

大雨晚上十点才停。

The heavy rain stopped at 10 pm.

25. 天天 tiān tiān

天 here means 'day'. You have learned 今天(jīntiān—today) 明天(míngtiān—tomorrow), 后天(hóutiān—the day after tomorrow), 昨天(zuótiān—yesterday), 前天(qiántiān—the day before yesterday). When 天 is duplicated, it functions as an adverbial meaning 'every day'. See the following:

来中国以后,他天天吃中餐。

Since he has come to China, he eats Chinese food every day.

我爸爸天天早上7点起床(qǐ chuáng—to get up from bed), 晚上10点睡觉(shuìjiào—to go to sleep)

My father gets up at seven in the morning and goes to sleep at ten in the evening every day.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



jié mù dān

节目单

program list

第三十九课 买纪念品 M i Jìniànp n

Topic 39 Buying Souvenirs



情境 SITUATION:

在广州某工艺品店买纪念品。

The Martins are buying souvenirs in an arts and crafts shop in Guangzhou.

对话 DIALOGUE

Dàwèi : Xǐ o jī , nà zhāng guà zài qiáng shàng de shānshuǐ huàr

大卫 : 小姐 那张 挂在 墙 上的 山水画儿
(word for word) miss , that on the wall landscape

dùshǎo qián ?

多少钱 ?
how much ?

Shòuhuòyuán : Liǎngqiān sì .

售货员 : 两千 四。
(word for word) two thousand four

ānní : Huà de búcuò , yǒudiǎnr Lǐ Kě rǎn de fēnggé .

安妮 : 画得 不错 , 有点儿 李可染的 风格。
(word for word) well painted , a bit Li Keran style

Dàwèi : Hǎo , wǒ jiù mǎi zhè zhāng . Nǐ ne ?

大卫 : 好 , 我就 买 这 张 。 你呢 ?
(word for word) yes , I'll buy this. you

ānní : Wǒ mǎi nà fú shūfǎ . Wǒ xǐhuān shàngbiān de nà shǒu Tángshī .

安妮 : 我 买 那幅 书法。我 喜欢 上边 的那 首 唐诗。
(word for word) I'll buy that scroll calligraphy. I like on it that Tang poem.

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó xiǎoxuéshēng dōu huì bèi sòng .

听说 中国 小学生 都会 背诵。
said Chinese primary school student can recite

Bèilā : Ō , Lǐ Báide Jìng Yè Sī . Wǒ niàn , nǐmen tīng :

贝拉 : 噢 , 李白的《静夜思》。我 念 , 你们 听 :
(word for word) Oh , Li Bai 's Thoughts on a Still Night. I'll read , you listen

Chuángqián míngyuè guāng ,

床 前 明月 光 ,
before bed , bright moonlight shines

Yíshì dì shàng shuāng .

疑是 地 上 霜 。
wonder upon the floor frost

Jǔ tóu wàng míngyuè ,

举 头 望 明月 ,
raise head gaze clear moon

Dī tóu sī gùxiāng .

低 头 思 故乡 。
bow head , miss hometown

英文 ENGLISH:

David : Miss ,How much is that landscape ,that one on the wall ?

Shop assistant :Two thousand four hundred.

Anne : It 's well painted ,a bit like the style of Li Keran.

David : Yes ,I 'll buy it. What will you buy ?

Anne : I 'll buy that scroll of calligraphy. I like the Tang poem written on it. It is said that every primary school student can recite this poem.

Bella : Oh ,it 's Li Bai 's Thoughts on a Still Night. I 'll read it and you listen :

Before my bed ,bright moonlight shines ,

I wonder if it 's frost upon the floor.

I raise my head to gaze at the clear moon ,

I bow my head ,and miss my old hometown.

注释



1. 挂 guà

挂 ,a verb ,means ' to hang ,to put up '.

请把地图 (dìtú—map) 挂在墙上.

Put up the map on the wall.

请您把衣服挂在那儿。

Please hang your clothes over there.

2. 墙 qiáng

You know 墙 means ' wall '.

老北京有城墙。

There were city walls in old Beijing.

你看 ,前边的墙上坐着一个人。

Look ,there is a person sitting on the wall in front of us.

3. 山水画 shānshuǐ huà

landscape painting

Literally ,**山水画** means ' a painting of mountains and rivers. 'It specifically refers to landscape of traditional Chinese painting. In the dialogue ,they mentioned the painter **李可染** (Li Keran ,1907—1989). He was a contemporary master of traditional Chinese painting ,especially famous for his landscapes.

4. 画 huà

画 as a noun , means ‘ painting , picture ’. 画 , as a verb , means ‘ to draw , to paint ’.

那位画家(huàji —painter)画了很多画。

That painter has drawn many pictures.

这幅画很像李可染画的。

This painting is like a painting by Li Keran.

5. 有点儿 y udi nr

有 + 点儿 , which is shortened from 有 + 一点儿 , is a verb—object phrase , meaning ‘ there is a little ’. The following are some other phrases of this kind :

吃点儿——二位吃点儿什么 ?

What do you two want to eat ?

喝点儿——我想喝点儿啤酒。

I want to drink a little bit of beer.

6. 风格 f nggé

You know 风 means ‘ style ’. 格 means ‘ squares formed by crossed lines ’.

请把字写在格里。

Please write the characters in the squares.

他在纸上打了格。

He has made squares on the paper.

But 格 in 风格 means ‘ style ’. The combination 风格 means ‘ style , manner , feature ’. See the following :

中国的山水画有自己的风格。

The Chinese landscape has its own style.

李可染的风格跟别人不一样。

Li Keran 's style is different from others.

7. 幅 fú

幅 is a measure word for painting , calligraphy.

那幅字写得很好。

That calligraphy is really well written.

他哥哥买了两幅山水画。

His elder brother bought two landscape paintings.

8. 书法 sh f

You know 书 means ‘ book ’. 书 also means ‘ to write ’. 法 means ‘ law , method , ways ’.

那个电影非常好。可是我没票 , 没法去看。

That film is very good , but there is no way for me to see it since I have no ticket.

The combination 书法 means ‘ ways of writing , calligraphy ’.

我正在跟一个书法家(sh f ji —calligrapher)学书法。

I am learning calligraphy from a calligrapher.

我最喜欢李可染的书法。

I like Li Keran's calligraphy most.

9. 首 shǒu

首 means 'head' in literary Chinese. Here 首 functions as a measure word for 'song, poem, etc.'

他会这首歌, 请他唱。

He knows how to sing this song. Ask him to sing it, please.

马先生写的五首诗, 我都会背诵。

I can recite the five poems written by Mr. Ma.

10. 唐诗 Tángshī

Tang poetry

In the history of Chinese literature, the Tang Dynasty (618—907) is a period during which the creation of poetry reached an unprecedented height. The poem cited in the dialogue is entitled Thoughts on a Still Night and is a masterpiece of Li Bai, one of the representatives of Tang poetry.

11. 小学生 xiǎoxuéshēng

小 means 'small, little, young'. 学 means 'to study'. 生, as a noun, means 'person'. The combination 小学 means 'primary school'. The combination 小学生 means 'primary school pupil'. 中学生 means 'high school student'. 大学生 means 'university student'.

他是小学生。他哥哥是中学生。他姐姐是大学生。

He is a primary school pupil. His elder brother is a high school student. His elder sister is a university student.

12. 背诵 bèisòng

背 means 'the back of the body, be with the back towards, to recite'.

你的背上有什么?

What's on your back?

那个孩子背着父母(fùmǔ—parents)抽烟(chōuyān—to smoke)。

That child smoked behind his parents.

她能背几百首古诗。

She can recite several hundred classical poems.

诵 means 'to read aloud, to chant, to recite'. The combination 背诵 means 'to recite'.

我非常喜欢背诵诗歌。

I like to recite poems very much.

13. 静夜 jìng yè

静 means 'still, quiet'. See the following:

她静静地坐着看书。

She is sitting there quietly while reading.

大家静下来,不要说话。

Stop talking and be quiet, everybody.

真静啊,一点儿声音都没有。

How quiet. There is not a sound.

But, 安静(nǐng—quiet) is more often used to express the same meaning in modern Chinese.

请大家安静,我有事要告诉你们。

Be quiet, everybody. I have something to tell you.

夜 means 'night, evening'. See the following:

为了写书,我昨天一夜没睡觉。

To write the book, I didn't sleep last night.

他坐了一天一夜的飞机。

He was on board the plane for one day and one night.

The combination 静夜 means 'quiet night'.

14. 念 niàn

You know 念 means 'to read'.

我不会念这个汉字。

I cannot read this Chinese character.

请你大声念,我听不清。

I cannot hear clearly. Read it loudly.

Do you know how to translate the sentence 他正在念书 into English? One translation would be "He is reading a book". That is correct, but there is one more possibility: He is studying at school. Because '念书' also means 'to go to school' in modern Chinese. 念 niàn. You know 念 means 'to read'.

我不会念这个汉字。

I cannot read this Chinese character.

请你大声念,我听不清。

I cannot hear clearly. Read it loudly.

15. 床 chuáng

床 means 'bed'.

为什么这个房间里没有床?

Why is there no bed in this room?

我太累了。我要上床睡觉。

I am too tired. I'll go to bed.

这是一张小孩的床。

This is a bed for children.

16. 明月 míngyuè

You know 明 in 明天 (tomorrow). 明 means 'bright' here. 月 means 'moon'.

天上的明月非常迷人。

The bright moon in the sky is very attractive.

17. 光 guāng

光 means 'light, smooth, used up, only'.

我看见了灯(dēng—lamp, lantern)光。

I have seen the lamp light.

他把饭吃光了。

He has eaten the meal.

她光说不做。

She is just talking about it without doing it.

世界人口很多,光中国就有 13 亿人。

There are many people in the world. China alone has 13 hundred million people. (1 billion 300 million)

18. 疑 yí

疑 means 'suspect' which is not often used alone in modern Chinese.

19. 霜 shuāng

霜 means 'frost'.

这个地方地上没有霜,那个地方有霜。

There is no frost on the ground here, but there is frost there.

这里哪个季节下霜?

In which season does it frost here?

20. 举 jǔ

举 means 'to lift'.

他举着一杯酒。

He is holding up a cup of wine.

21. 头 tóu

头 means 'head, first'.

很多人喜欢吃猪头肉。

Many people like to eat the meat from a pig's head.

我计划头一天参观故宫,第二天参观长城。

I plan to visit the Forbidden City on the first day and visit the Great Wall on the second day.

22. 望 wàng

望 means 'to gaze into the distance, to glance, to hope, to expect'.

你在望什么呢?

What are you looking at?

他望了望我就走了。

He just shot a glance at me then walked away.

望你回信。

Hope you write me a reply.

23. 低 d

低 means 'to lower, low'.

你的汉语水平高。我的汉语水平低。

The level of your Chinese is high. Mine is low.

门不高, 进屋(w —room)的时候, 请你低下头。

The door is not high. Please lower your head when you enter the room.

24. 思 s

思 means 'to think, to miss' which is not often used alone in modern Chinese.

25. 故乡 gùxi ng

You know 故 means 'former, old, to die'.

我想参观黄河(Huánghé—The Yellow River)故道(gùdào—the old course)。

I want to visit the old course of the Yellow River.

他的父母已经(y jng—already) 故去。

His parents already passed away.

乡 means 'country, countryside, village, rural area' which is not commonly used alone in modern Chinese. The combination 故乡 means 'hometown'.

北京不是我的故乡。我的故乡是西安。

Beijing is not my hometown. My hometown is Xi'an.

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



l yóu jì niàn p n sh na tíng

旅游纪念品商亭

tourist souvenir stand

a mā yì m i shù fú wù bù

工艺美术服务部

arts and crafts shop

wén wù sh na diàn

文物商店

antique shop

第四十课 巧遇 Qi oyù

Topic 40 An Encounter



情境 SITUATION:

马丁一家在香港某公园里遇到李大龙。

The Martins and Mr. Li Dalong meet in a park in Hong Kong.

Bèil : L sh shu ,w men yóul n le B ijng、Chéngdé、X ' n、
 贝拉： 李叔叔，我们游览了北京、承德、西安、
 (word for word) Li Uncle ,we visited Beijing ,Chengde ,Xi 'an ,
 Guǐlín、Shàngh íhé Gu ngzhMǐ.
 桂林、上海 和 广州。

Guilin ,Shanghai and Guangzhou
 W juéde zhèxi dìfāng dMǐ h nmírén. Nínne ?
 我觉得这些地方都很迷人。您呢？
 I feel they all fantastic. You

L Dàlóng : W yóul n le B ijng、Chéngd 、L sà、W hàn hé Gu ngzhMǐ ,
 李大龙： 我游览了北京、成都、拉萨、武汉和广州，
 (word for word) I visited Beijing ,Chengdu ,Lhasa ,Wuhan and Guangzhou.
 dMǐ h nh o ,tèbié shì L sà de Bù Dá l G Mǐg、
 都很好特别是拉萨的布达拉宫、
 all wonderful ,especially Lhasa 's Potala Palace ,
 Chángji ng de S nxiá ,zh nshì dà k y njè.
 长江的三峡，真是大开眼界。
 Yangtze River Three Gorges. Really big eye-opener

Dàwèi : W men jìhuà xià cì lái ZhMǐggguó àn n de lùxiàn z u.
 大卫： 我们计划下次来中国按你的路线走。
 (word for word) we plan next come China take your route go

L dàlóng : Xià cì shì shénme shíhou ?
 李大龙： 下次是什么时候？
 (word for word) next is when time

Dàwèi : èrlínalínab nián. Shùnbiniàn y kàn yíxià oyùnhuì.
 大卫： 2008年。顺便也看一下奥运会。
 (word for word) 2008 year. convenient also look Olympic Games

Bèil : Búgu ,xià cì w yídìng d ndú huód ng ,h o duMshuMHàny .
 贝拉： 不过，下次我一定单独活动，好多说汉语。
 (word for word) But ,next time I will myself ,good more speak Chinese

L dàlóng : N Hàny shuMǐt ngh o.
 李大龙： 你汉语说得挺好。
 (word for word) you Chinese speak quite well

Bèil : N lǐ ,n lǐ . ZhMǐggguó y u yí jù xī h uy ,
 贝拉： 哪里哪里。中国有一句歇后语，
 (word for word) not really. China has a two-part (allegorical) saying.

z nme shuMle ?A ... duì ,
 怎么 说 的 啊.....对 ,
 How does it go ?Ah ,... right ,
 “ dàizhe c omàorq n zu r —— chàde yu n la !”
 “ 戴着 草帽儿 亲嘴儿—— 差得 远 啦 !”
 wear straw hats kiss——far from

英文 ENGLISH:

Bella : Uncle Li , we visited Beijing , Chengde , Xi ' an , Guilin , Shanghai and Guangzhou. They were all fantastic. What about you ?

Li Dalong : I visited Beijing , Chengdu , Lhasa , Wuhan and Guangzhou. They were wonderful , especially Lhasa ' s Potala Palace and the Three Gorges of the Yangtze River. They unveiled a new world to me.

David : We plan to take your route next time we come.

Li Dalong : When will be your next time ?

David : The year 2008. In addition , we will have a look at the Olympic Games then.

Bella : But , next time I will go all the way myself to have more opportunities to practice my Chinese.

Li Dalong : You speak Chinese quite well now.

Bella : Not really. China has a two-part (allegorical) saying. How does it go ? Ah , right , ‘ A couple trying to kiss each other with straw hats on - there is a long distance between them. ’ My Chinese is far from perfect.

注释 : ||| ▶▶

1. 叔叔 sh shu

uncle

Some kinship terms in Chinese are often used to address people who are not one ' s

kin. Here 叔叔 is used for a man who is of one's father's generation but younger. For a woman the term 阿姨 (yí—Auntie) is used. The usage is shown in the following examples:

叔叔,你好! 阿姨,你好! (used independently)

李叔叔,张阿姨! (surname + kinship term)

大龙叔叔, 明美阿姨! (given name + kinship term)

李大龙叔叔, 张明美阿姨! (full name + kinship term)

2. 觉得 juéde

When 觉 is pronounced 'jué', it means 'to sense, to feel'.

下了雪以后,我就觉得冷多了。

After snow, I feel it is much colder.

我觉着身上不舒服。

I fell uncomfortable.

You learned 得 before. The combination 觉得 means 'to feel'.

我觉得一点儿都不累。

I don't feel tired at all.

他们不觉得汉语难学。

They don't feel it's difficult to learn Chinese.

你觉得这个计划怎么样?

What do you think of this plan?

One thing must be mentioned there: when 觉 is pronounced 'jiào', it means 'sleep'. For the Chinese 睡觉 (shuìjiào—go to sleep).

他每天晚上10点睡觉。

He goes to bed at 10 p. m. every day.

我很困(kùn—sleepy)。我要睡觉。

I'm sleepy and I want to go to bed.

3. 好 hǎo

In this sentence, 好 is an auxiliary, meaning 'so that'. For example:

我们想找个中国朋友,好练习汉语。

I want to find a Chinese friend to practice Chinese.

我买了很多好吃的东西,好给我妈妈吃。

I have bought many delicious things for my mother.

4. 大开眼界 dà kāi yǎn jiè

You know 大 means 'big, old'. Here 大 functions as an adverb meaning 'in a big way, greatly'.

他常常大吃大喝,把钱都花光了。

He often eats and drinks extravagantly and spends all his money.

You know 开 means 'to open' here.

请开门,让我进去。

Please open the door and let me in.

眼 means 'eye' here.

你自己有眼,为什么不自己看?

You have eyes yourself. Why don't you see it yourself?

界 means 'boundary, circles'.

黄河是山西和陕西的界河。

The Yellow River is the boundary river between Shanxi and Shaanxi provinces.

他在音乐界非常有名。

He is very famous in musical circles.

The combination 眼界 means 'field of vision'.

这次参观真开眼界。

This visit is a real eye-opener to me.

5. 计划 jìhuà

计, as a verb, meaning 'to count, to care of'.

他工作努力 (n lì—hard-working), 不计时间。

He works very hard and doesn't mind working longer.

计, as a noun, means 'plan, idea'.

他们一计不成, 又有一计。

Their first plan failed and they tried another.

划, as a verb, means 'to draw, to divide'. The combination 计划 means 'to plan' as well as 'plan'. When it functions as a noun, 计划 means 'plan, project'.

大卫和安妮计划后天观看杂技。

David and Anne plan to see an acrobatic show the day after tomorrow.

这是一个非常好的计划。

This is a very good plan.

6. 按 àn

按 means 'to press, to push down'.

把那个坏人按在地上。

Push down that bad person on the ground.

请你按他的头。

Please press his head.

按 also means 'according to'.

请你按我的计划去做。

Please do it according to my plan.

我们一定要按时做好这个工作。

We must get the job done on time.

7. 路线 lùxiàn

You know 路 means 'way, road'. 线 means 'thread, line, wire'.

不要动, 这是电线。

Don't touch it. This is electric wire.

织毛衣要有毛线。

To knit a sweater must have woolen thread.

中国建了一条新铁路 (ti lù—railway) 线。

A new railway line has been built in China.

The combination 路线 means 'route, itinerary'.

这是去北京的路线。

This is the route to Beijing.

8. 顺便 shùnbìan

You learned 顺 in 顺利 (shùnlì—smoothly) and 便在 方便 (fāngbiàn—convenient).

The combination 顺便 functions as an adverb meaning ' (do something) in addition to what one is already doing, without extra efforts '. See the following :

我常常在回家的时候 顺便到书店看看。

I often look in the bookshop on my way home

你去商店的时候 顺便给我买一件毛衣。

Buy woolen clothes for me while shopping in the store.

9. 奥运会 oyùnhuì

奥 refers to 奥林匹克 (olímp kè—Olympic) 运 refers to 运动 (yùndòng—sports). You know 会 here means ' meeting '. The combination 奥运会 means ' the Olympic Games '.

10. 单独 dāndú

You learned 单 before. Here it means ' alone, single '. 独 means ' only, solely '.

这是中国独有的酒。

This is a liquor that is only produced in China.

The combination 单独 means ' alone, by oneself '.

单独一个人做不了这件事。

Nobody can do this job alone.

她单独住一间屋子。

She lives in a room by herself.

我想单独跟他谈 (tán—to talk) 一谈。

I want to talk with him alone.

11. 活动 huódòng

活 means ' to live, alive ' and 动 means ' to move, to touch '. The combination 活动 means ' to move, to do physical exercises, activity, unsteady '.

我天天参加体育活动。

I take part in physical activities every day.

我不喜欢单独一个人出去活动。

I don't like to move around alone.

他的牙 (yá—tooth) 活动了。

His teeth are loose.

12. 挺 tǐng

挺 means 'to straighten'.

穿这种衣服 你要挺胸(xiǎng—chest)。

Wearing this kind of clothing, you should throw out your chest.

你应该挺起腰(yào—waist, back)。

You should straighten your back.

挺 can also function as an adverb meaning 'very', which is often used in spoken Chinese.

做这种活动挺危险。

It's quite dangerous to do this kind of activity.

13. 哪里 nǎlǐ ! Nǐ , nǐ !

Not really !

The original meaning of 哪里 is 'where', but here it is used as an expression of courtesy in reply to a praise. For example :

A :你们这个舞蹈演得真好 !

Your dancing performance was really wonderful.

B :哪里 ,哪里 !

Not really !

14. 歇后语 xiéhòuyǔ

歇 means 'to have a rest'.

咱们歇一下 喝杯茶。

Let's knock off for a cup of tea.

她已经歇了一个星期。

She has been off from work for a week.

后 means 'behind, after', 语 means 'word, language'. The combination 歇后语 refers to 'a two-part allegorical saying', with the first part being a descriptive statement and the second, sometimes unstated, carries the message. e. g. :

泥(ní—clay, mud)菩萨(púsà—Buddha)过(guò—to cross)河(hé—river)

自(zì—self)身(shēn—body)难保(nánbǎo—to protect).

Like a clay idol fording a river—hardly able to save itself (let alone anyone else).

15. 戴 dài

戴 means 'to wear, to put on' just used with gloves, glasses, scarf, watch, gauze mask, mask, medal, decoration, flower, etc..

他胸(xiōng—chest)前戴着花。

He is wearing a flower on his chest.

她戴着一块非常贵的手表(shǐ ubi o—watch)。

She is wearing a very valuable watch.

那个戴眼镜(yǎnjìng—eye glasses)的人是我的老师(lǎoshī—teacher)。

That man with glasses on is my teacher.

他带着的毛线帽子是他自己织的。

The woolen cap he is wearing he knitted himself.

16. 草帽 cǎo mào

草 means 'grass'. 帽 means 'headgear, hat, cap'. The combination 草帽 means 'straw hat'.

用草做的帽子叫草帽。

The hat made of straw is called a straw hat.

她戴的草帽真漂亮。

The straw hat she is wearing is really beautiful.

17. 亲嘴 qīn zuǐ

亲 means 'relatives, close, in person'.

我的亲人都在这个城市里。

All my relatives are in the city.

我的朋友林文先生和我们非常亲。

My friend Mr. Lin Wen is very dear to us.

你不能亲眼去看一看他吗？

Can you see him in person (with your own eyes) ?

亲 can function as a verb, meaning 'to kiss'. See the following :

他亲了一下孩子的脸(liǎn—face)。

He kissed the child on the cheek.

嘴 means 'mouth'.

请把嘴张开(zhāng—open) ,我看看你的牙。

Please open your mouth and I can have a look at your teeth.

The combination 亲嘴 is a colloquial expression, meaning 'to kiss on the mouth (lips)'.

你看 ,两个年轻人在那里亲嘴。

Look , the young couples are kissing over there.

18. 差 chà

差 pronounced 'chà' in the 4th tone means 'be short of, be less than, to owe, differ, bad'.

我在这里差七天不到一年。

I have been here seven days short of a year.

现在差十分八点。

It's 10 to 8 now.

这些东西不比那些差。

These things are not inferior to those.

我的汉语水平比他的差吗？

Is the level of my Chinese lower than his ?

差 is often used with a complement such as '差不多' (a little bit less), '差点儿' (not quite up to the mark, not good enough), '差得多', '差多了' (far from). See the

following :

他离开学校差不多三十年了。

It 's almost thirty years since he left school.

跟她比 ,我的汉语水平差得多。

Compared with her , my Chinese is far worse than hers(behind).

差 can function as a noun pronounced in the first tone. It means ' difference '. See the following :

十五减(ji n—to subtract)五的差是十。

The difference between fifteen and five is ten.

19. 啦 la

啦 , a modal particle , is used to express exclamation or surprise.

他真来啦 !

He has really come !

这次(cì—measure word)旅行太好啦 !

This trip is great !

实用汉字认读 Recognition of practical characters



Zhù nín yí lù píng ān

祝您一路平安

Bon voyage

词汇总表

A

啊		(叹、助)	particle used at the end of a sentence to express xclamation	06
爱	ài	(动)	like , to love	33
爱人	àiren	(名)	husband or wife	16
安全	nquán	(形、名)	safe , safety , secure , security	12

B

八	b	(数)	eight	22
吧	ba	(助)	particle used at the end of a statement to form a moderate question	07
把	b	(动)	hold , to hold , handle	08
爸(爸爸)	bà(bàba)	(名)	father	09
白	bái	(形)	white	19
白雪	báixu	(名)	snow	28
半	bàn	(数)	half	19
包儿	b or	(名)	bag	06
保护	b ohù	(动)	to protect , to safeguard , protection	30
背诵	bèis na	(动)	to recite	39
比价	b jià	(名)	rate of exchange	11
变化	biànhuà	(动)	to change , change	35
遍地	biàndì	(形)	everywhere	29
表示	bi oshì	(动、名)	to express , expression	16
别	bié	(副)	do not	13
兵马俑	B nam y na	(名)	the Terracotta Warriors	31
不	bù	(副)	no	05
不但.....而且.....	bùdàn...érqi ...			

		(连)	not only. . . , but also. . .	13
不都是	bùdōu shì	(动)	not all , some of. . .	13
不过	búguò	(连)	is a conjunction introducing a turn in speech. but , however	31
不客气	búkèqì	(形、动)	you 're welcome , don 't be so polite	06
不止	bùzhǐ	(动)	not to stop	37

C

菜	cài	(名)	vegetable , dish	05
参观	cān guān	(动)	to visit	30
草帽	cǎo mào	(名)	straw hat	40
层	céng	(量)	layer , story , floor	10
茶	chá	(名)	tea	19
差	chā	(动、形)	be short of , be less than , to owe , differ , bad	40
长	cháng	(形)	long , length	29
尝	cháng	(动)	to taste	19
场	chǎng	(量、名)	a large place , a measure word for certain activities	33
唱	chàng	(动)	to sing	33
车	chē	(名)	car	09
成功	chéng gōng	(动、形)	success , successful	33
城	chéng	(名)	city , city wall	30
城市	chéng shì	(名)	city	36
吃	chī	(动)	eat	14
吃饭	chī fàn	(动)	to have meal	17
抽时间	chōu shíjiān	(短)	to try to find time	36
出发	chū fā	(动)	to set off	21
出来	chū lái	(动)	to come out	38
出了	chū le	(动)	out	26
出租车	chū zé chē	(名)	taxi	13
厨房	chú fáng	(名)	kitchen	16
处处	chù chù	(副)	everywhere	28
穿上	chuān shàng	(动)	to wear	29

传统	chuánt n	(名)	tradition	36
床	chuána	(名)	bed	39
创造	chuànzào	(动、名)	to create	31
春天	ch bti n	(名)	spring	29
纯粹	chúncuì	(形)	pure , sheerly , wholly	31
次	cì	(量、形)	a measure word used with train numbers	35
从	cóna	(介)	from	07
从.....就.....	cóna...jiù...	(连)	from... then	38
错	cu	(形、名)	wrong , fault	29

D

打	d	(动)	to play	37
打开	d k i	(动)	open	08
大	dà	(形)	big , large	23
大概	dààài	(形、副)	general idea , roughly , approximately , approximate , probably , about , perhaps	29
大开眼界	dàk iy njiè		eye-opening	40
大厦	dàshà	(名)	tall building , mansion	35
大约	dàyu	(副)	about , around , approximately	07
带	dài	(动)	to bring , to take with	08
戴	dài	(动)	to wear , to put on	40
单独	d ndú	(形)	alone , by oneself	40
单人间	d nrénji n	(名)	a room for one person	10
当然	d narán	(形)	certainly , doubtless , not doubt , of course	23
倒	dào	(动)	upside down , to move backwards , to pour	24
到	dào	(动)	arrive	04
得	dé	(动)	to get , to gain , be ready	30
的	de	(助)	a suffix indicating possession	04
等	d na	(动、名、助)		

			wait	21
等一 下儿	d na yíxià		wait a minute	08
低	d	(形、动)	to lower , low	39
地方	dífana	(名)	place	30
地上	dìshàna	(名)	upon the floor	39
地图	dítú	(名)	map	22
第	dì	(词头)	prefix indicating an ordinal number	35
典型	dì nxína	(名)	model , typical	36
点	dì n	(量)	some , a little	21
点	dì n	(动)	a verb , meaning ‘ to order ’	19
点儿	dì nr	(量)	some , a small amount	17
电视	diànshì	(名)	TV	25
顶	d na	(动)	to carry on the head	38
订	dina	(动)	to order , to book , to staple together , to make reservation for	10
冬天	dMti n	(名)	winter	28
懂	d na	(动)	to know , to understand	33
动作	d nazu	(名)	movement , action	38
都	dM	(副)	all	29
都是	dM shì	(动)	all are	13
豆浆	d uǐ na	(名)	soy-bean milk	17
度	dù	(名、量)	degree	34
锻炼	duànliàn	(动)	to take exercises , to have physical training	21
队	duì	(名)	team	37
对	duì	(介、动、形)	right , correct	04
对不起	duìbuq	(短)	sorry	20
多	duM	(副、形)	how	13
多少	duMhao	(数)	how many , how much	12
多少钱	duMh oqián	(短)	How much money ?	23

E

二	èr		two	17
---	----	--	-----	----

二百	èrbǐ		two hundred	24
二十	èrshí		twenty	04
二十摄氏度	èrshíshèshìdù (短)		20 degrees by Celsius	34

F

发掘	fājué	(动)	to excavate , to unearth	31
反	fǎn	(形、副)	in an opposite direction , reverse , inside out , to rebel	33
饭	fàn	(名)	food	16
房间	fángjiān	(名)	room	10
放心	fànxīn	(形)	be assured	11
飞机	fēijī	(名)	plane	04
非常	fēicháng	(副)	very , extraordinarily , unusual	16
肥	fēi	(形)	fat	19
风格	fēnggé	(名)	style , manner , feature	39
服务	fúwù	(动)	service	06
服务员	fúwùyuán	(名)	attendant	07
幅	fú	(量)	is a measure word for painting	39
附近	fùjìn	(名)	nearby	25

G

敢	gǎn	(动)	to dare	35
刚才	gāngcái	(名)	a moment ago , just	38
高	gāo	(形)	high	10
高楼	gāolóu		tall building	35
高难	gāonán		highly-skilled and difficult	38
高兴	gāoxìng	(形)	pleased , happy , glad	03
歌儿	gēer	(名)	song	33
个	gè	(量)	a general use , non-specific meas- ure word	08
个个	gègè	(形)	every , all	31
给	gěi	(动)	give	06
更	gèng	(副)	still more , even more	27
工作	gōngzuò	(名)	working	14

公家	aMaji	(名)	the state , the public , the organiza- tion	13
公里	aMial	(名)	kilometer	12
公司	aMias	(名)	company	13
功夫	aMafu	(名)	skill , attainments	38
购物	a u wù		shopping	22
够	a u	(形)	enough	05
古	a	(形)	ancient , old	30
古老	a l o	(形)	ancient	29
故乡	aùxi na	(名)	hometown	39
刮风	au f na	(动)	to blow	34
挂	auà	(动)	to hang , to put up	39
拐	au i	(动)	turn to	07
冠军	auànj n	(名)	champion , the first place in a co- ntest	37
光	au na	(名、形、副)	light , smooth , used up , only	39
贵	auì	(形)	expensive , valuable , dear	12
国家	auóji	(名)	country , state	13
过	au	(动、副、助)	pass , to pass , a verbal suffix to in- dicatethat the action is a past expe- rience	35

H

孩子	háizi	(名)	son , child	16
汉语	Hàn y	(名)	the Chinese language	13
好 ²	h o	(副)	is an auxiliary , meaning ' so that '	22
好	h o	(形)	good	03
好看	h okàn	(形)	good looking , beautiful	15
好客	hàokè	(形)	hospitable	16
好哇	h o w		OK	21
好像	h oxiana	(动)	as if , seem , be like	34
喝	h	(动)	to drink	14
和	hé	(连)	and	05

和谐	héxié	(形)	harmonious	33
很	hěn	(副)	very	03
胡同	hútong	(名)	lane Hutong is a word borrowed from Mongolian , It 's used mainly in Beijing.	26
护照	hùzhào	(名)	passport	08
花儿	huār	(名)	flower	29
华里	huálǐ	(名)	0.5 KM a Chinese unit of distance equal to 500 meters	29
画	huà	(名、动)	as a noun , means ‘ painting , picture ’. as a verb , means ‘ to draw , to paint ’.	39
欢迎	huānyíng	(动)	welcome	09
还	hái	(副)	in addition to , moreover , still	13
还没有	hái méiyǒu	(短)	to have not yet	31
还是	háishì	(连)	or	05
换	huàn	(动)	change	11
换钱	huàn qián	(动)	change money	11
荒地	huāngdì	(名)	wasteland , uncultivated land	35
回去	huíqù	(动)	to return , to go back	08
会	huì	(动)	to know , to be able to , can	12
活动	huódòng	(动、名)	to move , to do physical exercises , activity , unsteady	40
活生生	huóshēngshēng	(形)	living , real	31

J

机会	jīhuì	(名)	opportunity , chance	08
极了	jíle	(副)	extremely	29
几	jǐ	(数)	how many , some , several , few	10
计划	jìhuà	(名、动)	to plan , plan , project	40
记住	jìzhù	(动)	remember	25
季节	jìjié	(名)	season	28
加	jiā	(动)	to add , plus	05
家	jiā	(名)	home	15

家常	jī chána	(名)	the daily life of a family , domestic trivia	16
捡	jǐ n	(动)	to select , to choose , to pick up	18
见	jiàn	(动)	see	14
见闻	jiànwén	(名)	what one has seen and heard , inf- ormation	08
件	jiàn	(量)	piece , a measure word for luggage	07
建	jiàn	(动)	to build , to establish	29
建议	jiànyì	(动、名)	to suggest , suggestion	18
建筑	jiànzhù	(名、动)	to build , to construct , a building	35
郊区	jī oq	(名)	suburbs	21
饺子	jī ozi	(名)	Chinese dumpling	21
叫	jiào	(动)	call	03
叫 ²	jiào	(动)	to call , to cry...	31
接	jī	(动)	to meet upon arrival , to pick some- eone up	09
接机	jī j		meeting at the airport	09
街道	jī dào	(名)	street , residential district	36
结果	jiéau	(名、动)	result	37
结束	jiéshù	(动)	to end , to close	37
结账	jiézhàna	(动)	to settle account , to pay a bill	20
介绍	jièshào	(动)	introduce	03
今天	jīntī n	(名)	today	32
斤	jīn	(量)	is a Chinese unit of weight , equal to 500 grams or half a kilo	23
紧	jīn	(形)	tight , short of , close	30
尽量	jīnliàna	(副)	to try one 's best , as...as possible	30
进	jìn	(动)	to come in , to enter	15
经理	jīnglǐ	(名)	manager	14
精彩	jīngcǎi	(形)	brilliant , splendid , wonderful	38
景色	jīngsè	(名)	scenery	28
警察	jīngchá	(名)	police	26
静夜	jìngyè	(名)	quiet night	39
酒	jǐu	(名)	spirit , wine or any alcoholic drink	19
就	jiù	(副)	adverb , just , here is used to emp- hatically indicate a fact.	04

就是	jiùshì	(副)	namely	25
举	jǔ	(动)	lifting	39
句	jù	(量、名)	sentence	36
距今	jù jīn	(短)	from now , up to now	29
觉得	juéde	(动)	to feel	40

K

开	kāi	(动)	unclose(in blossom)	29
开车	kāi chē	(动)	to drive a car	12
开始	kāi shǐ	(动)	start	04
开心	kāi xīn	(形)	happy , have a good time	30
看	kàn	(动)	to see , to watch , to visit , to read	09
看到	kàndào	(动)	have seen	25
看看	kànkàn	(动)	look , take a look	08
烤鸭	kǎo yā		roast duck	19
可能	kěnéng	(副、名)	maybe , possible , possibility	13
可以	kěyǐ	(助动)	can	04
客气	kèqì	(形、动)	polite	16
空车	kòngchē	(名)	car for hire	12
空儿	kòngr	(名)	free time	21
空位	kòngwèi	(名)	vacant seat	04
恐怕	kǒnpà	(副)	be afraid of , perhaps	30
块	kuài	(量)	piece , used in spoken Chinese to indicate unit of currency	12
快	kuài	(形)	fast , be quick , to hurry up	12

L

啦	la	(助)	a modal particle , is used to express exclamation or surprise.	40
来	lái	(动)	to come , but also used as a verb when making an order or request	03
劳驾	láojià	(短)	Excuse me	07
老	lǎo	(形、副)	an adjective , means ' old , close ' , an adverb , means always , for a l-	

			ong time '	16
累	lèi	(形)	tired	09
离	lí	(动、介)	be away from , to leave , part from	07
离开	lík i	(动)	to leave	10
里	l	(名)	inside	05
里 ²	l	(量)	a traditional measure word distance in China , which is 500 meters long .	21
历史	lìsh	(名)	history	29
利用	lìy na	(动)	to utilize , to make use of	08
练	liàn	(动)	to exercise , to practise	38
凉	liána	(形)	cool , cold	05
两	li na	(数、量)	two	10
两千	li naqi n		two thousand	29
辆	liàna	(量)	measure word for car , bus , bike , train , etc	12
了	le	(ch le fàn	吃了饭) after dinner (to have had one 's meal)	09
了	le	(助)	particle indicating an action has been completed	09
了解	li oji	(动)	to get to know , to comprehend , to know	13
六	liù	(数)	six	12
六十	liùshí	(数)	sixty	21
楼	lóu	(名)	building , floor	25
录	lù	(动)	to record	08
路线	lùxiàn	(名)	route , itinerary	40
旅馆	l au n	(名)	hotel	09
旅途	l tú	(名)	trip , journey	06
旅行	l xína	(动)	to travel , tour , journey	11
旅游	l yóu	(动)	to travel	03

M

妈	m	(名)	mother , Mom	15
---	---	-----	--------------	----

吗	m	(助)	particle indicating a question , used like a question mark	10
买	m i	(动)	to buy	22
卖	mài	(动)	to sell	24
忙	mána	(形)	to work , be busy , be busy with/at	16
毛衣	máoy	(名)	sweater	24
没	méi	(副)	not	14
没什么	méi shénme	(短)	nothing is special	16
没完没了	méi wán méi li o	(短)	endlessly	13
没想到	méi xi nadào	(短)	unexpected , didn 't expect	36
每	m i	(代、副)	every , each , per	10
美	m i	(形)	beautiful	27
美元	m iyuán	(名)	U. S. dollar	10
门口	ménk u	(名)	gate , door	21
迷路	mí lù	(短)	get lost	26
迷人	mírén	(形)	attractive	28
米饭	m fàn	(名)	often refers to rice , cooked rice	05
名酒	mínaji	(名)	famous wine	19
名胜古迹	mínashèna a jì	(名)	scenic spots and historical sites	30
明天	mínati n	(名)	tomorrow	04
明月	mína yuè	(名)	bright moon	39

N

拿	ná	(动)	take	05
拿走	náz u	(动)	to take something away	16
拿走吧	náz u b		take it	24
哪	n	(代)	particle	23
哪儿	n r	(代)	where	04
哪里 ,哪里 !	n l ,n l !		Not really !	40
那 ²	nà	(连)	then , in that case	04
那	nà	(代)	there	04
那里	nàl	(代)	at there	12
那么	nàme	(代、连)	like that , in the way ,---so , then	38

那时候	nàshíhòu	(短)	that time , then	35
难得	nándé	(形)	hard to get	16
难度	nándù	(名)	difficulty level	33
呢	ne	(助)	particle ,“ 你呢 ?”meaning “ and you ?”	05
能	néna	(形、助动)	to be able , to be possible can	13
你	n	(代)	you	03
你好	n h o	(短)	How are you	03
你们	n men	(代)	you	03
年	nián	(名)	year	29
年代	niándài	(名)	times , year	29
念	niàn	(动)	to read	39
您	nín	(代)	you (respectful)	03
您好	nính o	(短)	How are you	03
牛奶	niún i	(名)	cow milk	05

O

噢	o	(叹)	oh	28
---	---	-----	----	----

P

排	pái	(动、名、量)	row , line	04
盘子	pánzi	(名)	plate	05
旁边	pánabi n	(名)	side	25
陪	péi	(动)	to accompany	21
朋友	pénayou	(名)	friend	35
碰	pèng	(动)	to bump , to run into , to meet by chance , to touch	14
琵琶	pípá	(名)	a plucked string instrument with a fretted fingerboard	33
骗	piàn	(动)	to deceive , to cheat	12
漂亮	piàolian	(形)	pretty	36
票	piào	(名)	ticket	32
乒乓球	p nap naqiú	(名)	table tennis	37
苹果	pínaau	(名)	apple	23

葡萄	pútáo	(名)	grape	19
----	-------	-----	-------	----

Q

七	qī	(数)	seven	14
七点	qī diǎn	(名)	7 o'clock	14
奇迹	qíjī	(名)	wonder, miracle	31
骑	qí	(动)	to ride	21
气温	qì wēn	(名)	air temperature	34
千	qiān	(数)	thousand	31
前	qián	(名)	before	07
前边儿	qiánbianr	(名)	in front of, at the head, ahead	04
钱	qián	(名)	money	12
墙	qiáng	(名)	wall	39
亲嘴	qīn zuǐ	(短)	to kiss on the mouth (lips)	40
清楚	qīngchǔ	(形)	clear, clearly	13
情况	qíngkuàng	(名)	condition, situation	13
晴	qíng	(形)	clear, fine (for weather)	34
请	qǐng	(动)	please, invite	08
请问	qǐng wèn		excuse me	07
请坐	qǐng zuò	(短)	to sit down, to have a seat	16
取	qǔ	(动)	take	07
去	qù	(动)	go	03
确实	quèshí	(形)	indeed, really	29

R

让	ràng	(动)	to let, to allow	31
热情	rèqíng	(形)	warm, enthusiastic	06
人	rén	(名)	person, people, human beings	12
人民币	rénmínbì	(名)	the people's currency----RMB	11
认领处	rènlǐn chù	(名)	claim	07
认识	rènshi	(动、名)	to know, to recognize	03
肉	ròu	(名)	meat	18
如果	rúguo	(连)	if	05
如何	rúhé	(代)	how, what	37

入境证	rùjìnazhèna (名)	entry form	08
-----	-----------------	------------	----

S

赛	sài (动)	match , game , to compete	37
三	sān (数)	three	18
三百	sānbǎi (数)	three hundred	20
三天前	sāntiān qián	three days ago	14
山水画	shuǐ huà (名)	a painting of mountains and rivers	39
上	shàng (动、名)	on	12
上边	shàngbian (名)	above , on top of , top	39
上等	shàngdì (名)	first class	24
上午	shàngwǔ (名)	morning , forenoon	04
少	shǎo (形、动)	few , little	15
摄像机	shèxiàngjī (名)	video camera	08
身体	shēntǐ (名)	body	21
神	shén (名)	god , supernatural , magical	38
声	shēng (名、代)	sound , voice	31
什么	shénme (代)	what	03
时候	shíhou (名)	time	04
时间	shíjiān (名)	time	04
实力	shíli (名)	strength	37
实在	shízài (形)	true , real , honest , in deed	30
世界	shìjiè (名)	the world	28
市	shì (名)	city , municipality , market , bazaar	30
是……的	shì... de	is... have...	09
是	shì (动)	is	14
手提包	shǒutíbāo (名)	hand bag	08
首	shǒu (量)	functions as a measure word for 'song , poem , etc. '	39
售票员	shùpiàoyuán (名)	person who sells tickets	32
瘦	shòu (形)	thin , tight	19
书法	shūfǎ (名)	ways of writing---calligraphy	39
叔叔	shūshu (名)	Uncle	40
输	shū (动)	to lose , to transfusion	37
双人间	shuāng rénjiān (名)	a room for two persons	10

霜	shu na	(名)	frost	39
谁	shéi	(代)	who	13
谁的	shéi de		whose	06
水平	shu pín	(名)	level	37
顺便	shunbiàn	(副)	in addition to what one is already doing , without extra efforts	40
顺利	shunlì	(形)	smooth , without a hitch	06
说	shuō	(动)	to speak	13
私人	sī rén	(名)	private	13
思	sī	(动)	to think , to miss	39
四	sì	(数)	four	18
四川名菜	Sìchuan míncài		A famous Sichuan dish	19
四合院	sìhéyuàn	(名)	quadrangle compound an enclosed courtyard with rooms on four sides	15
俗话	súhuà	(名)	common saying	36

T

弹	tán	(动)	to snap one 's finger(s) , to play (a stringed musical instrument)	33
他们	tā men	(代)	they	03
它	tā	(代)	it	29
它们	tā men	(代)	them	31
台	tái	(名、量)	platform , station	25
台风	táifēng	(名)	typhoon	34
太	tài	(副)	very , too , more than enough	12
态度	tàidù	(名)	attitude	06
摊主	tānzhǔ	(名)	stall owner , vendor , peddler	22
唐诗	tángshī	(名)	Tang poetry	39
糖	táng	(名)	sugar , sweets	05
桃	táo	(名)	peach	29
特别	tèbié	(形)	exceptional , very	33
提心吊胆	tíxīndiǎndǎn	(短)	be very apprehensive , to have one 's heart in one 's mouth	38
天	tiān	(名)	day	10

天堂	ti ntána	(名)	paradise	36
天天	ti nti n	(名)	every day	38
听	t na	(动)	to hear	33
听说	t nashuM		It is said that... , to hear of , to be told to hear what is spoken by others	16
停	tína	(动)	to stop , to stay , to park	12
挺	t na	(动、副)	to straighten ,very	40
同	tóna	(形)	same	28
同意	tónayì	(动)	to agree , to share the same idea	14
同志	tónazhì	(名)	comrade	26
桶	t na	(名)	tub , pail , bucket , barrel	38
头	tóu	(名)	head	39
图	tú	(名)	pictures , drawing	22

W

外	wài	(名)	outside	09
完	wán	(动)	to come to an end , to be over	16
玩笑	wánxiào	(名)	to joke with , to play a prank on	34
晚	w n	(形、动)	night or evening	10
晚上	w nsh na	(名)	evening	14
碗	w n	(名)	bowl	38
往	w na	(介、动)	to	07
往前走	w na qián z u	(短)	go straight ahead	25
望	wàna	(动)	to gaze into the distance , to glance , to hope , to expect	39
危险	w xī n	(形)	danger , dangerous	38
为什么	wèishénme	(短)	for what , why	24
伟大	w idà	(形)	great	31
味道	wèid o	(名)	taste	19
喂	wèi	(动)	hi , hello	14
闻名	wénmína	(形)	famous , well-known	30
问	wèn	(动)	ask	07
问路	wèn lù	(动)	to ask directions	25
问题	wèntí	(名)	question , problem	21

我	w	(代)	I	03
我们	w men	(代)	We	03
我女儿	w n 'ér		my daughter	03
我太太	w tài i	(短)	my wife	03
无法	wú f	(形)	no way , unable	31
五	w	(数)	five half	23
五十	w shí	(数)	fifty	20
舞蹈	w d o	(名)	dance	33

X

西餐	x c n	(名)	western food	05
希望	x wàna	(动、名)	to hope , hope	14
洗手间	x sh uji n	(名)	toilet	04
喜欢	x hu n	(动)	to like , be fond of	10
细心	xì x n	(形)	careful , carefully	06
下	xià	(动)	to get off	28
下次	xià cì	(名)	next time	28
下来	xià lai		is often used after a verb to indicate that the result of the verb will remain on a surface , paper , etc.	08
下午	xià w	(名)	afternoon	04
下雨	xià y	(动)	to rain	34
先	xi n	(副)	first	09
先生	xi nshena	(名)	sir , Mr.	03
现代化	xiàndàihuà	(动、名)	to modernize , modernization	36
现金	xiànj n	(名)	cash	11
现在	xiàn zài	(名)	now , this moment	13
馅儿	xiànr	(名)	filling , stuffing	18
相识	xi nashí	(动)	getting to know each other	03
相信	xi naxìn	(动)	to believe , to trust	35
想	xi ng	(动、助动)	to want , be willing to , to think of	08
想到	xi nadào	(动)	expected	14
想象	xi naxiàna	(动)	to imagine , imagination	31
向	xiàna	(介、动)	towards , from	31
像	xiàna	(动、名)	portrait , be like , seem , such as	30

小	xi o	(形、头)	small , little , young	08
小姐	xi oji	(名)	miss	12
小心	xi ox n	(形、动)	be careful	27
小学生	xi oxuésh na	(名)	primary school pupil	39
小意思	xi oyìsi	(名)	a small token of one 's regard , nothing important	16
歇后语	xi h uy	(名)	refers to 'a two-part allegorical saying ' , with the first part , being a descriptive statement and the second , sometimes unstated , carries the message.	40
谢谢	xièxie	(动)	thank you	05
谢意	xièyì	(名)	thanks , gratitude , appreciation	16
新	x n	(形)	new	22
新建	x n jiàn	(动)	to build recently	35
新鲜	x nxi n	(形)	fresh	23
信用卡	xìny nak	(名)	credit card	20
星期一	x naq y	(名)	Monday	10
星期二	x naq èr	(名)	Tuesday	10
星期三	x naq s n	(名)	Wednesday	10
星期四	x naq sì	(名)	Thursday	10
星期五	x naq w	(名)	Friday	10
星期六	x naq liù	(名)	Saturday	10
星期日	x naq rì	(名)	Sunday	10
行	xína	(动)	OK , alright	20
行李	xíngli	(名)	luggage	07
杏	xìna	(名)	apricot	29
幸福	xìna fú	(形)	happy , happiness	24
休息休息	xi xi xi xi	(动)	take a rest	09
许多	x duM	(形)	many	30
栩栩如生	x x rúsh na	(形)	true to life	31
巡警	xúnj na	(名)	patrolling policeman	26

Y

呀	y	(叹)	an interjection , is often used to ex-	
---	---	-----	--	--

			press surprise.	31
眼睛	y nǐna	(名)	eye	35
演出	y nch	(动、名)	performance , to perform , perform	33
演技	y nǐ	(名)	acting , stage performance	33
演员	y nyuán	(名)	actor or actress , performer	38
羊	yána	(名)	sheep	18
羊毛	yánamáo	(名)	wool	24
样	yàna	(量)	kind	18
要	yào	(动)	want	05
也	y	(副)	also , too	03
一	y	(数)	one	12
一点儿	yì di nr	(名)	a little	19
一定	yídìna	(形)	must , certainly	09
一个	yíàè		one	10
一流	yìliú	(名)	first rate	33
一片	yí piàn	(形、名)	a flat , thin piece , or slice	35
一万	yíwàn	(数)	ten thousand	29
一望无际	yí wàna wú jì	(形)	to stretch as far as the eye can see	28
一下	yí xià	(副)	once , one time	16
一下儿	yí xiàr	(副)	once , one time	03
一样	yíyàna	(形)	same	12
一直	yì zhí	(副)	straight , all the time	25
疑	yí	(动)	suspect	39
以前	y qián	(名)	before	13
艺术	yìshù	(名)	art	31
阴	y n	(形)	cloudy	34
音乐	y nyuè	(名)	music	33
饮料	y nliào	(名)	drinks	05
应该	y naa i	(助动)	should , ought to	06
赢	yína	(动)	to win	37
用	y na	(动)	to use	11
油条	yóutiáo	(名)	deep-fried dough sticks	17
游客	yóukè	(名)	tourist	35
游览	yóul n	(动)	to tour , to travel and see	26
有	y u	(动)	have	05
有点儿	y u di nr	(副)	somewhat , slightly , there is a little	39

有多远？	y u duMyu n ?	How far ?	07
有人	y u rén	someone , anyone	09
又……又……	y u...y u...	as well as	23
又	y u (副)	again	12
右	y u (名)	right , opposite of left	05
鱼	yú (名)	fish	05
愉快	yúkuài (形)	happy , pleased	06
园林	yuánlín (名)	garden	36
远	yu n (形)	far	21
院子	yuànzǐ (名)	courtyard	15
越……越	yuè...yuè	the more... the more...	27
越来越	yuè lái yuè	more and more	15
云彩	yúnc i (名)	clouds	34

Z

杂技	zájì (名)	acrobatics	33
再	zài (副)	again , is an adverb.	05
再见	zàijiàn (动)	‘ to see again ’ or ‘ good-bye ’	06
再说	zàishuō (动、连)	put off until some time later , say later	30
在……上	zài...shàng	on...	27
在	zài (介、动、副)	on	05
在家	zài jiā (动)	be at home	16
咱们	zánmen (代)	the inclusive we (= you and I)	21
早	zǎo (形)	early	14
早上	zǎoshàng (名)	morning	21
怎么	zěnmeyàng (代)	how	25
怎么样	zěnmeyàng (代)	How is it ? How about this ? in what condition is... ? is an expression to ask for opinion	21
扎啤	zhāpí (名)	beer served with jars , that is draft beer	18
展示	zhǎnshì (动)	to open up before one 's eyes	31
战马	zhàn mǎ (名)	battle horses	31

张	zhāng	(量)	piece	28
找(钱)	zhǎo(qián)	(动)	to look for , to give change	20
照片	zhàopiàn	(名)	photo	28
这	zhè	(代)	this	13
这儿	zhèr	(代)	here	07
这个	zhège	(代)	this one	04
这里	zhèlǐ	(代)	this place , here	13
这么	zhème	(代)	this way , like this.	16
这些	zhèxiē	(代)	these	16
这样	zhèyàng	(代)	this way , like this	36
真	zhēn	(形、副)	really	06
正好	zhèngnǎo	(形)	just , coincidentally	21
正在	zhèngzài	(副)	adverb indicates that the action is in progress and at the end of the s- entence	16
支票	zhīpiào	(名)	cheque , check	11
知道	zhīdào	(动)	to know , to understand	25
织	zhī	(动)	to knit , to weave	24
值得	zhídé	(动)	be worth , to deserve	30
只	zhī	(量)	as a measure word for birds , poul- try.	19
只好	zhǐhǎo	(副)	there is no choice , could only	30
只是	zhǐshì	(副、连)	is used before an unfortunate event	16
中餐	zhōngcān	(名)	Chinese food	05
中间儿	zhōngjiānr	(名)	in the middle , in the centre	04
中央	zhōngyāng	(名)	center , central , middle	25
钟楼	zhōnglóu	(名)	bell tower	30
种	zhǒng	(量、名)	kind , sort , type	15
周到	zhōudào	(形)	thoughtful	06
猪	zhū	(名)	pig	18
主意	zhǔyi	(名)	idea	08
住	zhù	(动)	live , stay	10
住宿	zhùsù	(动)	to arrange for accommodations	10
住宅	zhùzhái	(名)	residence , dwelling	15
祝	zhù	(动)	to wish , to express good wishes	06
抓	zhuā	(动)	to grab , to seize , to take , to ar-	

			rest	30
转	zhuàn	(动)	to go around , to revolve	21
装	zhuān	(动)	dress , clothes , to pretend , to load	29
着	zhe	(助)	suffix attached to a verb to indicate a continuous state	38
字	zì	(名)	character , word	24
自己	zìjǐ	(代)	oneself , one 's own	35
自行车	zìxíngchē	(名)	bicycle	21
走	zǒu	(动)	walk , go	07
钻	zuān	(动)	to go deep into/through	38
最	zuì	(副)	the highest degree	22
最好	zuìhǎo	(副)	the best , would better , had best	26
左右	zuǒ yǒu	(形、名、副)	more or less , about	04
坐	zuò	(动)	to sit , by	04
做	zuò	(动)	to do , to make	38
做客	zuò kè	(动)	to be a guest	15

专名词

奥运会	oyùnhuì	The Olympic Games	40
北京	Běijīng	Beijing	04
北京时间	Běijīng shíjiān	Beijing time	04
昌平	Chānpíng	Is a district in northern Beijing	21
长城	Chángchéng	The Great Wall	27
长城干白	Chángchéng gānbái	“Great Wall Dry White”is the name of a grape wine produced in Beijing , Great Wall Dry White.	19
东方明珠	Dōngfāng míngzhū	‘ oriental bright pearl ’the name of the TV tower in Shanghai	35
杭州	Hángzhōu	Hangzhou is the capital of Zhejiang Province. It is well known for its nat- ural beauty , especially the attrac- tive West Lake.	36

茅台酒	Máotáijiǔ	is one of the most famous spirits in China	14
秦朝	Qín Cháo	the Qin Dynasty(221—207B. C)	29
荣宝斋	Róngbǎozhāi	is the name of a famous gallery of calligraphy and traditional Chinese paintings in Beijing.	26
苏州	Sūzhōu	Suzhou is the name of a city situated in the delta of the Yangtze River , to the east of Taihu Lake. The city was founded in the sixth century B. C. by a prince of the Wu State. Suzhou 's once-private gardens are celebrated throughout the country for their beauty.	36
唐代	Tángdài	the Tang Dynasty in China (618—907AD)	33
中华世纪坛	Zhōnghuá Shìjì Tán	The Chinese Millennium Monument	25